# USER'S MANUAL 

S3CB519
8-Bit CMOS
Microcontroller
Revision 2

ELECTRONICS

# S3CB519 

# 8-BIT CMOS MICROCONTROLLERS USER'S MANUAL 

Revision 2
sAMSUNG
ELECTRONICS

## Important Notice

The information in this publication has been carefully checked and is believed to be entirely accurate at the time of publication. Samsung assumes no responsibility, however, for possible errors or omissions, or for any consequences resulting from the use of the information contained herein.

Samsung reserves the right to make changes in its products or product specifications with the intent to improve function or design at any time and without notice and is not required to update this documentation to reflect such changes.

This publication does not convey to a purchaser of semiconductor devices described herein any license under the patent rights of Samsung or others.

Samsung makes no warranty, representation, or guarantee regarding the suitability of its products for any particular purpose, nor does Samsung assume any liability arising out of the application or use of any product or circuit and specifically disclaims any and all liability, including without limitation any consequential or incidental damages.
"Typical" parameters can and do vary in different applications. All operating parameters, including "Typicals" must be validated for each customer application by the customer's technical experts.

Samsung products are not designed, intended, or authorized for use as components in systems intended for surgical implant into the body, for other applications intended to support or sustain life, or for any other application in which the failure of the Samsung product could create a situation where personal injury or death may occur.

Should the Buyer purchase or use a Samsung product for any such unintended or unauthorized application, the Buyer shall indemnify and hold Samsung and its officers, employees, subsidiaries, affiliates, and distributors harmless against all claims, costs, damages, expenses, and reasonable attorney fees arising out of, either directly or indirectly, any claim of personal injury or death that may be associated with such unintended or unauthorized use, even if such claim alleges that Samsung was negligent regarding the design or manufacture of said product.

## S3CB519 8-Bit CMOS Microcontrollers

## User's Manual, Revision 2

## Publication Number: 22-S3-CB519-042004

## © 2004 Samsung Electronics

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electric or mechanical, by photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written consent of Samsung Electronics.

Samsung Electronics' microcontroller business has been awarded full ISO-14001 certification (BSI Certificate No. FM24653). All semiconductor products are designed and manufactured in accordance with the highest quality standards and objectives.

Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd.
San \#24 Nongseo-Ri, Kiheung-Eup
Yongin-City, Kyunggi-Do, Korea
C.P.O. Box \#37, Suwon 449-900

TEL: (82)-(331)-209-1907
FAX: (82)-(331)-209-1899
Home-Page URL: Http://www.samsungsemi.com
Printed in the Republic of Korea

## Preface

The S3CB519 Microcontroller User's Manual is designed for application designers and programmers who are using the S3CB519 microcontroller for application development. It is organized in two main parts:

## Part I Programming Model

Part II Hardware Descriptions
Part I contains software-related information to familiarize you with the microcontroller's architecture, programming model, instruction set, and interrupt structure. It has nine chapters:

| Chapter 1 | Product Overview | Chapter 5 | Hardware Stack |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Chapter 2 | Address Spaces | Chapter 6 | Exceptions |
| Chapter 3 | Registers | Chapter 7 | Coprocessor Interface |
| Chapter 4 | Memory Map | Chapter 8 | Instruction Set |

Chapter 1, "Product Overview," is a high-level introduction to S3CB519 with general product descriptions, as well as detailed information about individual pin characteristics and pin circuit types.

Chapter 2, "Address Spaces," describes program and data memory spaces. Chapter 2 also describes ROM code option.

Chapter 3, "Register," describes the special registers.
Chapter 4, "Memory Map," describes the internal register file.
Chapter 5, "Hardware Stack," describes the S3CB519 hardware stack structure in detail.
Chapter 6, "Exceptions," describes the S3CB519 exception structure in detail.
A basic familiarity with the information in Part I will help you to understand the hardware module descriptions in Part II. If you are not yet familiar with the S3CB-series microcontroller family and are reading this manual for the first time, we recommend that you first read Chapters 1-3 carefully. Then, briefly look over the detailed information in Chapters $4,5,6,7,8$, and 9 . Later, you can reference the information in Part I as necessary.

Part II "Hardware descriptions," has detailed information about specific hardware components of the S3CB519 microcontroller. Also included in Part II are electrical, mechanical. It has 16 chapters:

| Chapter 9 | Clock Circuit | Chapter 18 | LCD Controller/Driver |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| Chapter 10 | nRESET and Power-Down | Chapter 19 | A/D Converter |
| Chapter 11 | I/O Ports | Chapter 20 | D/A Converter |
| Chapter 12 | Basic Timer/Watchdog Timer | Chapter 21 | MAC 816 |
| Chapter 13 | Watch Timer | Chapter 22 | Electrical Data |
| Chapter 14 | 16-Bit Timer (8-Bit Timer A \& B) | Chapter 23 | Mechanical Data |
| Chapter 15 | 8-Bit Timer (Timer 0) | Chapter 24 | Development Tools |

Chapter 16 Serial I/O Interface
Chapter 17 Battery Level Detector
Chapter 21, "MAC816" describes the MAC816 structure in detail, as well as instructions.
Two order forms are included at the back of this manual to facilitate customer order for S3CB519 microcontrollers: the Mask ROM Order Form, and the Mask Option Selection Form.
You can photocopy these forms, fill them out, and then forward them to your local Samsung Sales Representative.

## Table of Contents

## Part I — Programming Model

## Chapter 1 Product Overview

Overview ..... 1-1
Features ..... 1-5
Pin Assignment ..... 1-7
I/O Pin Description ..... 1-8
Pin Circuit Diagrams ..... 1-10
Chapter 2 Address Spaces
Overview ..... 2-1
Program Memory (ROM) ..... 2-2
ROM Code Option (RCOD_OPT) ..... 2-5
Data Memory Organization ..... 2-7
Chapter 3 Registers
Overview ..... 3-1
Index Registers: IDH, IDL0 and IDL1 ..... 3-2
Link Registers: ILX, ILH and ILL ..... 3-2
Status Register 0: SR0 ..... 3-3
Status Register 1: SR1 ..... 3-4
Chapter 4 Memory Map
Overview ..... 4-1
Chapter 5 Hardware Stack
Overview ..... 5-1

## Table of Contents (Continued)

Chapter 6 Exceptions
Overview ..... 6-1
Hardware Reset ..... 6-1
NMI Exception (Edge Sensitive) ..... 6-2
IRQ[0] Exception (Level-Sensitive) ..... 6-2
IRQ[1] Exception (Level-Sensitive) ..... 6-2
Hardware Stack Full Exception ..... 6-2
Break Exception ..... 6-2
Exceptions (or Interrupts) ..... 6-3
Interrupt Mask Registers ..... 6-5
Interrupt Priority Register ..... 6-6
Chapter 7 Coprocessor Interface
Overview ..... 7-1
Chapter $8 \quad$ Instruction Set
Overview ..... 8-1
Glossary ..... 8-1
Instruction Set Map ..... 8-2
Quick Reference. ..... 8-9
Instruction Group Summary ..... 8-12
ALU Instructions ..... 8-12
Shift/Rotate Instructions ..... 8-16
Load Instructions ..... 8-18
Branch Instructions ..... 8-21
Bit Manipulation Instructions ..... 8-25
Miscellaneous Instruction. ..... 8-26
Pseudo Instructions ..... 8-29

## Table of Contents (Continued)

## Part II Hardware Descriptions

## Chapter $9 \quad$ Clock Circuit

Overview ..... 9-1
System Clock Circuit ..... 9-1
Chapter 10 nRESET and Power-Down
Overview ..... 10-1
Chapter 11 I/O Ports
Overview ..... 11-1
Port 0 ..... 11-1
Port 1 ..... 11-4
Port 2 ..... 11-5
Port 3 ..... 11-5
Port 4 ..... 11-6
Port 5 ..... 11-7
Chapter 12 Basic Timer
Overview ..... 12-1
Block Diagram ..... 12-2
Chapter 13 Watch Timer
Overview ..... 13-1
Watch Timer Circuit Diagram ..... 13-2
Chapter 14 16-Bit Timer (8-Bit Timer A \& B)
Overview ..... 14-1
Interval timer function ..... 14-1

## Table of Contents (Continued)

Chapter 15 8-Bit Timer (Timer 0)
Overview ..... 15-1
Function Description ..... 15-2
Timer 0 Control Register (TOCON) ..... 15-3
Block Diagram ..... 15-4
Chapter 16 Serial I/O Interface
Overview ..... 16-1
Programming Procedure ..... 16-1
SIO Control Register (SIOCON) ..... 16-2
SIO Pre-Scaler Register (SIOPS) ..... 16-3
Block Diagram ..... 16-3
Serial I/O Timing Diagrams ..... 16-4
Chapter 17 Battery Level Detector
Overview ..... 17-1
Chapter 18 LCD Controller/Driver
Overview ..... 18-1
LCD RAM Address Area ..... 18-1
LCD RAM (RAM Bank 12) ..... 18-1
LCD Control Register (LCON) ..... 18-2
LCD Voltage Dividing Resistors ..... 18-2
LCD Mode Register (LMOD) ..... 18-3
LCD Contrast Control Register (LCNST) ..... 18-4
LCD Key Scan ..... 18-8
Chapter 19 A/D Converter
Overview ..... 19-1
Features ..... 19-1
A/D Converter Control Register (ADCON) ..... 19-2
Chapter 20 D/A Converter
Overview ..... 20-1
D/A Converter Data Register (DADATA) ..... 20-3
D/A Converter Control Register (DACON) ..... 20-3

## Table of Contents (Concluded)

Chapter 21 MAC816
MAC816 Architecture Overview ..... 21-1
Programmer's Model ..... 21-3
Data Memory Accesses ..... 21-3
Computation Unit ..... 21-7
Status Registers ..... 21-9
Host Interface ..... 21-11
Instruction Set. ..... 21-14
Glossary ..... 21-14
Instruction Encoding ..... 21-20
Quick Reference ..... 21-22
MAC816 Instruction Description ..... 21-25
Chapter 22 Electrical Data
Overview ..... 22-1
Chapter 23 Mechanical Data
Overview ..... 23-1
Chapter 24 Development Tools
Overview ..... 24-1
CALMSHINE: IDE(Integrated Development Environment) ..... 24-1
Invisible MDS: In-Circuit Emulator ..... 24-1
CALMRISC8 C-Compiler: CALM8CC ..... 24-1
CALMRISC8 Relocatable Assembler: CALM8ASM ..... 24-1
CALMRISC8 Linker: CALM8LINK ..... 24-1
Emulation Probe Board Configuration ..... 24-2
External Event Input Headers (JP4) ..... 24-3
Event Match Output Headers (JP9) ..... 24-3
External Break Input Headers (TP4) ..... 24-3
A/D Converter Function Block. ..... 24-4
Communication Selection ..... 24-5
Use Clock Setting for External Clock Mode ..... 24-5
Sub Clock Setting ..... 24-5
CN1, CN2 Pin Assignment ..... 24-6

## List of Figures

Figure Title Page
Number ..... Number
1-1 Top Block Diagram ..... 1-2
1-2 CalmRISC Pipeline Diagram ..... 1-3
1-3 CalmRISC Pipeline Stream Diagram ..... 1-4
1-4 S3CB519 Block Diagram ..... 1-6
1-5 S3CB519 Pin Assignment Diagram (100-QFP) ..... 1-7
1-6 S3CB519 Pin Assignment Diagram (100-TQFP) ..... 1-8
1-71-8Pin Circuit Type B1-11
Pin Circuit Type C ..... 1-11
Pin Circuit Type E-2 ..... 1-11
Pin Circuit Type D-2 ..... 1-11
Pin Circuit Type H-29 ..... 1-12
Pin Circuit Type H-35 ..... 1-12
Pin Circuit Type H-34 ..... 1-12
1-14
Pin Circuit Type F-10 ..... 1-12
2-1 Program Memory Address Space ..... 2-22-2
Relative Jump Around Page Boundary ..... 2-3
Program Memory Layout ..... 2-4
ROM Code Option (RCOD_OPT) ..... 2-6
Data Memory Map ..... 2-7
S3CB519 Data Memory Map ..... 2-8
Bank Selection by Setting of GRB Bits and IDB Bit ..... 3-3
3-1
Control Register Area ..... 4-1
4-1
5-1 Hardware Stack. ..... 5-1
5-2
Even and Odd Bank Selection Example. ..... 5-2
5-3 Stack Operation with PC [19:0] ..... 5-3
5-4 Stack Operation with Registers ..... 5-4
5-5
Stack Overflow ..... 5-5

## List of Figures (Continued)

Figure Title Page
Number Number
6-1 Interrupt Structure ..... 6-3
6-2 Interrupt Structure ..... 6-4
6-3 Interrupt Mask Register ..... 6-5
6-4 Interrupt Priority Register ..... 6-6
7-1 Coprocessor Interface Diagram ..... 7-1
7-2 Coprocessor Instruction Pipeline ..... 7-3
9-1 System Clock Circuit Diagram ..... 9-2
9-2 Power Control Register (PCON) ..... 9-3Oscillator Control Register (OSCCON)9-3Port 0 Low-byte Control Register (POCONL)11-1Port 0 High-byte Control Register (POCONH)11-2Port 0 Interrupt Control Register (POINT)11-2
11-4
Port 0 Interrupt Edge Control Register (P0EDGE) ..... 11-3
11-5 Port 1 Control Register (P1CON). ..... 11-4
11-6
11-7Port 1 Interrupt Control Register (P1INT)11-4
Port 2 Control Register (P2CON) ..... 11-5
11-811-9Port 3 Control Register (P3CON).11-5Port 4 Control Register (P4CON).11-6
Port 5 Control Register (P5CON) ..... 11-7Watchdog Timer Control Register (WDTCON)12-1
12-2
Basic Timer \& Watchdog Timer Functional Block Diagram ..... 12-2
13-1 Watch Timer Circuit Diagram ..... 13-2
14-1 Timer A Control Register (TACON) ..... 14-1
14-2 Timer B Control Register (TBCON) ..... 14-2
14-3
Timer A, B Function Block Diagram ..... 14-3
15-1 Timer 0 Control Register (TOCON) ..... 15-3
15-2
Timer 0 Functional Block Diagram ..... 15-4
16-1 Serial I/O Control Register (SIOCON) ..... 16-2SIO Pre-scaler Register (SIOPS)16-3
16-3 SIO Functional Block Diagram ..... 16-3
16-4 Serial I/O Timing in Transmit/Receive Mode (Tx at falling, SIOCON. $4=0$ ) ..... 16-4
16-5
Serial I/O Timing in Transmit/Receive Mode (Tx at rising, SIOCON. $4=1$ ) ..... 16-4
17-1 Voltage Level Detection Circuit ..... 17-1
17-2 Battery Level Detector Control Register (BLDCON) ..... 17-2

## List of Figures (Concluded)

Figure Title Page
Number ..... Number
18-1 LCD Display Data RAM Organization ..... 18-1
18-2 LCD Control Register (LCON) ..... 18-2
18-3 Internal Voltage Dividing Resistor Connection ..... 18-2
18-4 LCD Mode Register (LMOD) ..... 18-3
18-518-6
LCD Contrast Register (LCNST) ..... 18-4
LCD Signal Waveforms (1/16 Duty, 1/5 Bias) ..... 18-5
18-7 LCD Signal Waveforms (1/8 Duty, 1/4 Bias) ..... 18-7
18-8 LCD Waveform when Key Strobe Signal is Active ..... 18-9
19-1 A/DC Control Register (ADCON) ..... 19-219-219-3
A/D Converter Block Diagram ..... 19-3
Application Example ..... 19-4
20-1 D/A Converter Circuit Diagram ..... 20-1
20-2 D/A Converter Timing Diagram ..... 20-2
20-3 D/A Control Register (DACON) ..... 20-3
21-1 Top Block Diagram ..... 21-1
21-2 Data Memory Organization ..... 21-3
21-3 RPU (RAM Pointer Unit) Block Diagram ..... 21-4
21-4 Computation Unit Block Diagram ..... 21-7
21-5 Coprocessor Interface Diagram ..... 21-11
21-6
Coprocessor Instruction Pipeline ..... 21-13
22-1 Input Timing for External Interrupts (Port 0, Port 1) ..... 22-4
22-2 Input Timing for nRESET ..... 22-4
22-3 Stop Mode Release Timing When Initiated by a nRESET ..... 22-522-4
22-6Stop Mode(Main) Release Timing Initiated by Interrupts
22-522-6Stop Mode(Sub) Release Timing Initiated by Interrupts.22-622-7Serial Data Transfer Timing22-722-8Clock Timing Measurement at XIN22-11
Operating Voltage Range ..... 22-12
23-1
100-QFP-1420C Package Dimensions ..... 23-2
23-2 100-TQFP-1414 Package Dimensions ..... 23-3
24-1 Emulation Probe Board Configuration ..... 24-2
24-2 A/D converter Function Block Diagram ..... 24-4

## List of Tables

Table Title Page
Number Number
1-1 S3CB519 Pin Descriptions ..... 1-9
3-1 General and Special Purpose Registers ..... 3-1
3-2 Status Register 0 Configuration ..... 3-3
3-3 ..... 3-4
Status Register 1: SR1
Control Registers 4-1 ..... 4-2
6-1 Exceptions ..... 6-1
7-1 Coprocessor instructions ..... 7-2
8-1 Instruction Notation Conventions ..... 8-1
8-28-38-48-5
8-68-7
8-88-9Overall Instruction Set Map.8-2
Instruction Encoding ..... 8-4
Index Code Information ("idx") ..... 8-7
Index Modification Code Information ("mod") ..... 8-7
Condition Code Information ("cc") ..... 8-7
"ALUop1" Code Information ..... 8-8
"ALUop2" Code Information ..... 8-8
"MODop1" Code Information ..... 8-8
Watch Timer Control Register (WTCON): 8-Bit R/W. ..... 13-1
21-1 RPU(RAM Pointer Unit) Registers ..... 21-4
21-2 RPi register bit information ..... 21-5
21-3 Coprocessor instructions ..... 21-12
21-4 Notation and Convention. ..... 21-14
21-521-6
MAC816 Registers ..... 21-15
21-16Data Transfer Registers
21-7 Memory Access Mode Information ..... 21-17
21-8 1-8 Condition Code Information ..... 21-18
21-9 Control Bit Code Information ..... 21-18
21-10 AU operation code information. ..... 21-19
21-11 Others ..... 21-1921-12
Instruction Encoding ..... 21-20
21-13 Quick Reference. ..... 21-22

## List of Tables (Continued)

Table Title Page
Number Number
22-1 Absolute Maximum Ratings ..... 22-1
22-2 D.C. Electrical Characteristics ..... 22-1
22-3 A.C. Electrical Characteristics ..... 22-4
22-4 Data Retention Supply Voltage in Stop Mode ..... 22-5
22-5 Synchronous SIO Electrical Characteristics ..... 22-7
22-6 BLD Electrical Characteristics ..... 22-8ADC Electrical Characteristics22-8
22-9DAC Electrical Characteristics22-9Main Oscillator Frequency (fosc1)....22-10
Main Oscillator Clock Stabilization Time ( $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{ST} 1}$ ) ..... 22-10
$22-11$
22-11 Sub Oscillator Frequency (foscz) ..... 22-11
22-12 Sub Oscillator(Crystal) Start up Time ( $\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{ST} 2}$ ). ..... 22-11

## List of Programming Tips

Description PageNumber
Chapter 2: Address Space
Using the Page Pointer for RAM clear (Page 0, Page 1) ..... 2-5
Setting the Register Pointers ..... 2-9
Using the RPs to Calculate the Sum of a Series of Registers ..... 2-10
Addressing the Common Working Register Area ..... 2-14
Standard Stack Operations Using PUSH and POP ..... 2-19
Chapter 6: Exceptions
Interrupt Programming Tip 1 ..... 6-7
Interrupt Programming Tip 2. ..... 6-8

## List of Instruction Descriptions

Instruction Full Register Name Page
Mnemonic ..... Number
ADC Add with Carry ..... 8-30
ADD Add ..... 8-31
AND Bit-wise AND ..... 8-32
AND SR0 Bit-wise AND with SR0Call Procedure ..... 8-33
BANK Bank Selection ..... 8-34
BITC Bit Complement ..... 8-35
BITR Bit Reset ..... 8-36
BITS Bit Set ..... 8-37
BITT Bit Test ..... 8-38
BMC/BMS TF bit clear/set ..... 8-39
CALL Conditional subroutine call (Pseudo Instruction) ..... 8-40
CALLS Call Subroutine. ..... 8-41
CLD Load into Coprocessor ..... 8-42
CLD Load from Coprocessor ..... 8-43
COM 1's or Bit-wise Complement ..... 8-44
COM2 2's Complement ..... 8-45
COMC Bit-wise Complement with Carry ..... 8-46
COP Coprocessor ..... 8-47
CP Compare ..... 8-48
CPC Compare with Carry ..... 8-49
DEC Decrement ..... 8-50
DECC Decrement with Carry ..... 8-51
DI Disable Interrupt (Pseudo Instruction) ..... 8-52El
IDLEEnable Interrupt (Pseudo Instruction)8-53
INC Increment ..... 8-55Idle Operation (Pseudo Instruction)8-54
INCC Increment with Carry ..... 8-56
IRET Return from Interrupt Handling ..... 8-57
JNZD Jump Not Zero with Delay Slot ..... 8-58
JP Conditional Jump (Pseudo Instruction) ..... 8-59
JR Conditional Jump Relative ..... 8-60
LCALL Conditional Subroutine Call. ..... 8-61
LD adr:8 Load into Memory ..... 8-62

## List of Instruction Descriptions (Continued)

Instruction Full Instruction Name Page Number
LD @idm Load into Memory Indexed ..... 8-63
LD Load Register ..... 8-64
LD Load GPR:bankd, GPR:banks ..... 8-65
LD Load GPR, TBH/TBL ..... 8-66
LD Load TBH/TBL, GPR. ..... 8-67
LD SPR Load SPR ..... 8-68
LD SPR0 Load SPR0 Immediate ..... 8-69
LDC Load Code ..... 8-70
LJP Conditional Jump ..... 8-71
LLNK Linked Subroutine Call Conditional ..... 8-72
LNK Linked Subroutine Call (Pseudo Instruction) ..... 8-73
LNKS Linked Subroutine Call ..... 8-74
LRET Return from Linked Subroutine Call ..... 8-75
NOP No Operation ..... 8-76
OR Bit-wise OR ..... 8-77
OR SR0 Bit-wise OR with SR0 ..... 8-78
POP POP ..... 8-79
POP POP to Register ..... 8-80
PUSH Push Register ..... 8-81
RET Return from Subroutine ..... 8-82
RL Rotate Left ..... 8-83
RLC Rotate Left with Carry ..... 8-84
RR Rotate Right ..... 8-85
RRC Rotate Right with Carry ..... 8-86
SBC Subtract with Carry ..... 8-87
SL Shift Left ..... 8-88
SLA Shift Left Arithmetic ..... 8-89
SR Shift Right. ..... 8-90
SRA Shift Right Arithmetic ..... 8-91
STOP STOP Stop Operation (Pseudo Instruction) ..... 8-92
SUB Subtract ..... 8-93
SWAP Swap. ..... 8-94
SYS System ..... 8-95
TM Test Multiple Bits ..... 8-96
XOR Exclusive OR ..... 8-97

## PRODUCT OVERVIEW

## OVERVIEW

The S3CB519 single-chip CMOS microcontroller is designed for high performance using Samsung's new 8-bit CPU core, CalmRISC.

CalmRISC is an 8-bit low power RISC microcontroller. Its basic architecture follows Harvard style, that is, it has separate program memory and data memory. Both instruction and data can be fetched simultaneously without causing a stall, using separate paths for memory access. Represented below is the top block diagram of the CalmRISC microcontroller.


Figure 1-1. Top Block Diagram

The CalmRISC building blocks consist of:

- An 8-bit ALU
- 16 general purpose registers (GPR)
- 11 special purpose registers (SPR)
- 16-level hardware stack
- Program memory address generation unit
- Data memory address generation unit

Sixteen GPRs are grouped into four banks (Bank0 to Bank3), and each bank has four 8-bit registers (R0, R1, R2, and R3). SPRs, designed for special purposes, include status registers, link registers for branch-link instructions, and data memory index registers. The data memory address generation unit provides the data memory address (denoted as DA[15:0] in the top block diagram) for a data memory access instruction. Data memory contents are accessed through $D[[7: 0]$ for read operations and $D O[7: 0]$ for write operations. The program memory address generation unit contains a program counter, $\mathrm{PC}[19: 0]$, and supplies the program memory address through PA[19:0] and fetches the corresponding instruction through $P D[15: 0]$ as the result of the program memory access. CalmRISC has a 16-level hardware stack for low power stack operations as well as a temporary storage area.


Figure 1-2. CalmRISC Pipeline Diagram
CalmRISC has a 3-stage pipeline as described below:
As can be seen in the pipeline scheme, CalmRISC adopts a register-memory instruction set. In other words, data memory where $R$ is a GPR can be one operand of an ALU instruction as shown below:

The first stage (or cycle) is the Instruction fetch stage (IF for short), where the instruction pointed by the program counter, PC[19:0], is read into the Instruction Register (IR for short). The second stage is the Instruction Decode and Data Memory Access stage (ID/MEM for short), where the fetched instruction (stored in IR) is decoded and data memory access is performed, if necessary. The final stage is the Execute and Write-back stage (EXE/WB), where the required ALU operation is executed and the result is written back into the destination registers.

Since CalmRISC instructions are pipelined, the next instruction fetch is not postponed until the current instruction is completely finished but is performed immediately after completing the current instruction fetch. The pipeline stream of instructions is illustrated in the following diagram.


Figure 1-3. CalmRISC Pipeline Stream Diagram

Most CalmRISC instructions are 1-word instructions, while same branch instructions such as long "call" and "jp" instructions are 2-word instructions. In Figure 1-3, the instruction, 14, is a long branch instruction, and it takes two clock cycles to fetch the instruction. As indicated in the pipeline stream, the number of clocks per instruction (CPI) is 1 except for long branches, which take 2 clock cycles per instruction.

## FEATURES

## CPU

- 8-bit CalmRISC


## Coprocessor

- MAC 816
- $8 \times 16,16 \times 16$ multiply and accumulation
- Arithmetic operation


## Memory

- ROM: 16K-word
- RAM: 3K-byte

2048 (X-memory)
1024 (Y-memory)

## I/O Pins

- 11 I/O: not include COM/SEG
- 35 I/O: include COM/SEG


## Power-Down

- Idle mode: only CPU clock stops
- Stop mode: main system oscillator stops
- Sub-system clock stop mode


## ROM Option

- Basic timer counter clock source selection reset value
- Watchdog timer enable/disable selection


## 8-Bit Basic Timer

- Programmable interval timer
- 8 kinds of clock source


## Watchdog Timer

- System reset


## Watch Timer

- Real time clock or interval time measurement
- Buzzer function ( $0.5 / 1 / 2 / 4 \mathrm{kHz}$ at 4.19 MHz OSC)


## Timer/Counters

- One 8-bit timer with PWM/Capture
- One 16-bit general-purpose timer/counter
- 8, 12 and 16 COM selectable
- 16-level contrast control
- Key strobe output function


## Battery Level Detector

- 2.4, 2.7, 3.0, 3.3, 4.0, 4.5 V detectable
- Internal level and/or external level selectable


## 8-Bit Serial I/O Interface

- 8-bit transmit/receive mode
- 8-bit receive mode
- LSB-first or MSB-first transmission selectable


## A/D Converter

- Sigma delta ADC
- Linear 14-bit data (16-bit format)
- 256X over sampling
- Operation voltage: $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=3.0 \mathrm{~V}-5.5 \mathrm{~V}$


## D/A Converter

- 8-bit resolution
- Regulated output voltage
- Operation voltage: $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=2.4 \mathrm{~V}-5.5 \mathrm{~V}$


## Oscillation Sources

- Crystal, ceramic, RC for main system clock
- Crystal or external oscillator for subsystem clock
- Main system clock frequency: Max 8.2 MHz
- Subsystem clock frequency: 32.768 kHz


## Operating Voltage

- 2.2 V to 5.5 V


## Operating Temperature Range

- $\quad-25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $85^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$


## Package Type

- 100-QFP-1420C, 100-TQFP-1414


## LCD Controller/Driver

- $56 \mathrm{SEG} \times 16 \mathrm{COM}$ terminals


Figure 1-4. S3CB519 Block Diagram

PIN ASSIGNMENT


Figure 1-5. S3CB519 Pin Assignment Diagram (100-QFP)


Figure 1-6. S3CB519 Pin Assignment Diagram (100-TQFP)

## I/O PIN DESCRIPTION

Table 1-1. S3CB519 Pin Descriptions

| Pin <br> Name | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Pin } \\ & \text { Type } \end{aligned}$ | Pin Description | Circuit Type | Share Pins |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{P} 0.0 \\ & \mathrm{P} 0.1 \\ & \mathrm{P} 0.2 \\ & \mathrm{P} 0.3 \\ & \mathrm{P} 0.4 \\ & \mathrm{P} 0.5 \\ & \mathrm{P} 0.6 \end{aligned}$ | I/O | I/O port with bit programmable pins; Input and output modes can be selected by software; Software assignable pull-up. Alternately, P0.0-P0.6 can be used as INT0-INT6, TB, T0, TOCAP, TOPWM, TOCK, BUZ, TACK, BLD, nSCK, SO, SI. | $\begin{gathered} \hline \mathrm{D}-2 \\ \mathrm{D}-2 \\ \mathrm{D}-2 \\ \mathrm{~F}-10 \\ \mathrm{D}-2 \\ \mathrm{D}-2 \\ \mathrm{D}-2 \end{gathered}$ | INTO/TB <br> INT1/T0/TOCAP/T <br> OPWM <br> INT2/T0CK/BUZ <br> INT3/TACK/BLD <br> INT4/nSCK <br> INT5/SO <br> INT6/SI |
| P1.0-P1.3 | I/O | I/O port with bit programmable pins; Input and output modes can be selected by software; Software assignable pull-up. Alternately, P1.0-P1.3 can be used as KS0-KS3. | D-2 | KS0-KS3 |
| P2.0-P2.7 | I/O | I/O port with 4-bit programmable pins; Input and output modes can be selected by software; Software assignable pullup. <br> Alternately, P2.0-P2.7 can be used as SEG55-SEG48. | H-35 | SEG55-SEG48 |
| P3.0-P3.7 | I/O | I/O port with 4-bit programmable pins; Input and output modes can be selected by software; Software assignable pullup. <br> Alternately, P3.0-P3.7 can be used as SEG47-SEG40. | H-35 | SEG47-SEG40 |
| P4.0-P4.7 | I/O | I/O port with 4-bit programmable pins; Input and output modes can be selected by software; Software assignable pullup. <br> Alternately, P4.0-P4.7 can be used as COM8-COM15. | H-35 | COM8-COM15 |
| P5.0-P5.15 | 0 | Key strobe output port with 4-bit programmable pins. Push-pull and open-drain modes can be selected by software. Alternately, P5.0-P5.15 can be used as SEG39-SEG24. | H-34 | SEG39-SEG24 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { SEG0- } \\ & \text { SEG23 } \end{aligned}$ | 0 | LCD segment signal output. | H-29 | - |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { SEG24- } \\ & \text { SEG39 } \end{aligned}$ | 0 |  | H-34 | P5.0-P5.15 |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { SEG40- } \\ & \text { SEG55 } \end{aligned}$ | I/O |  | H-35 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { P3.0-P3.7 } \\ & \text { P2.0-P2.7 } \end{aligned}$ |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { COM0- } \\ & \text { COM7 } \end{aligned}$ | 0 | LCD common signal output. | H-29 | - |
| COM8COM15 | 0 |  | H-35 | P4.0-P4.7 |
| KS0-KS3 | I/O | Key interrupt and/or external interrupt inputs. | D-2 | P1.0-P1.3 |
| INT0-INT2, INT4-INT6 | I/O | External interrupt input. | D-2 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { P0.0-P0.2, } \\ & \text { P0.4-P0.6 } \end{aligned}$ |
| INT3 | I/O |  | F-10 | P0.3 |

## SAMSUNF

Table 1-1. S3CB519 Pin Descriptions (Continued)

| Pin <br> Name | Pin Type | Pin Description | Circuit Type | Share Pins |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| TB | I/O | Timer B clock output. | D-2 | P0.0 |
| T0 | I/O | Timer 0 clock output. | D-2 | P0.1 |
| TOCAP | I/O | Timer 0 capture input. | D-2 | P0.1 |
| TOPWM | I/O | Timer 0 PWM output. | D-2 | P0.1 |
| TOCK | I/O | Timer 0 clock input. | D-2 | P0.2 |
| BUZ | I/O | Buzzer output. | D-2 | P0.2 |
| TACK | I/O | Timer A clock input. | F-10 | P0.3 |
| BLD | I/O | Battery level detector input. | F-10 | P0.3 |
| nSCK | I/O | Serial I/O interface clock signal. | D-2 | P0.4 |
| SO | I/O | Serial data output. | D-2 | P0.5 |
| SI | I/O | Serial data input. | D-2 | P0.6 |
| DAOUT | $\bigcirc$ | DAC analog output. | - | - |
| $\mathrm{AV}_{\mathrm{DD}}$ | - | Analog power. | - | - |
| $\mathrm{AV}_{\text {SS }}$ | - | Analog ground. | - | - |
| ADINP | 1 | Analog input positive. | - | - |
| ADINN | 1 | Analog input negative. | - | - |
| ADGAIN | - | Analog input gain control. | - | - |
| AVREFOUT | 0 | Analog reference voltage output. | - | - |
| REFH | - | Analog reference power. | - | - |
| REFL | - | Analog reference ground. | - | - |
| $V_{D D}$ | - | Main power supply. | - | - |
| $\mathrm{V}_{\text {SS }}$ | - | Ground | - | - |
| $\mathrm{x}_{\mathbb{N}}, \mathrm{X}_{\text {Out }}$ | - | Crystal, Ceramic or RC oscillator pins for system clock. | - | - |
| $\mathrm{XT}_{\mathbb{N},}, \mathrm{XT}_{\text {OUT }}$ | - | Crystal oscillator pins for subsystem clock. | - | - |
| TEST | 1 | Chip test input pin. <br> Hold GND with the device is operating. | - | - |
| nRESET | 1 | Reset signal | B | - |

## PIN CIRCUIT DIAGRAMS



Figure 1-7. Pin Circuit Type B


Figure 1-8. Pin Circuit Type C


Figure 1-9. Pin Circuit Type E-2


Figure 1-10. Pin Circuit Type D-2


Figure 1-11. Pin Circuit Type H-29


Figure 1-12. Pin Circuit Type H-35


Figure 1-13. Pin Circuit Type H-34


Figure 1-14. Pin Circuit Type F-10

## ADDRESS SPACE

## OVERVIEW

CalmRISC has 20-bit program address lines, $P A[19: 0]$, which support up to 1 Mwords of program memory. The 1 Mword program memory space is divided into 256 pages, and each page is 4 Kwords long as shown on the next page. The upper 8 bits of the program counter, $\mathrm{PC}[19: 12]$, points to a specific page, and the lower 12 bits, $\mathrm{PC}[11: 0]$, specify the offset address of the page.

CalmRISC also has 16-bit data memory address lines, DA[15:0], which support up to 64K-byte of data memory. The 64 K -byte data memory space is divided into 256 pages, and each page has 256 bytes. The upper 8 bits of the data address, DA[15:8], points to a specific page, and the lower 8 bits, DA[7:0], specify the offset address of the page.

## PROGRAM MEMORY (ROM)



Figure 2-1. Program Memory Organization

For example, if $\mathrm{PC}[19: 0]=5 \mathrm{~F} 79 \mathrm{AH}$, the page index pointed to by PC is 5 FH , and the offset in the page is 79 AH . If the current PC[19:0] = 5EFFFH and the instruction pointed to by the current PC (i.e., the instruction at the address $5 E F F F H$ is not a branch instruction), the next PC becomes 5 E 000 H , not 5 F 000 H . In other words, the instruction sequence wraps around at the page boundary, unless the instruction at the boundary (in the above example, at $5 E F F F H$ ) is a long branch instruction. The only way to change the program page is by long branches (CALL, LNK, and JP), where the absolute branch target address is specified. For example, if the current PC[19:0] = 047ACH (the page index is 04 H and the offset is 7 ACH ) and the instruction pointed to by the current PC (i.e., the instruction at the address 047ACH), is "JP A507FH" (jump to the program address A507FH), then the next PC[19:0] = A507FH, which means that the page and the offset are changed to A5H and 07FH, respectively. On the other hand, the short branch instructions cannot change the page indices.

Suppose the current PC is 6FFFEH and its instruction is "JR 5H" (jump to the program address PC +5 H ), then the next instruction address is 6 F 003 H , not 70003 H . In other words, the branch target address calculation also wraps around with respect to a page boundary. This situation is illustrated below:


Figure 2-2. Relative Jump Around Page Boundary
Programmers do not have to manually calculate the offset and insert extra instructions for a jump instruction across page boundaries. The compiler and the assembler for CalmRISC are in charge of producing appropriate codes for them.


NOTE: S3CB519 has totally 16K-word (32K-byte) program memory area.

Figure 2-3. Program Memory Layout

From 00000 H to 00004 H addresses are used for vector addresses of exceptions, and 0001 EH and 0001 FH are used for only the option. Aside from these addresses others are reserved in the vector and option area. Program memory area from the address 00020 H to FFFFFH can be used for normal programs.

Because the S3CB519's program memory is 16 Kword (32K-byte), the block of addresses from 00020 H to 3FFFH is the program memory area.

## ROM CODE OPTION (RCOD_OPT)

Just after power on, the ROM data located at 0001EH and 0001FH is used as the ROM code option. S3CB519 has ROM code options like the Reset value of Basic timer and Watchdog timer enable.

For example, if you program as below:

| opt_sec | section | CODE, abs 0001FH |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | opt_sec |  |
|  | $d w$ | $3 F F H$ |

- $\mathrm{fxx} / 32$ is used as Reset value of basic timer (by bit.14, 13, 12)
— Watch-dog timer is enabled (by bit.11)

If you don't program any values in these option areas, then the default value is " 1 ".
In these cases, the address 0001EH would be the value of "FFFFH".


Not used (Watchdog timer clock input is basic timer overflow)


ROM Address: 0001EH


Figure 2-4. ROM Code Option (RCOD_OPT)

## DATA MEMORY ORGANIZATION

The total data memory address space is 64K-byte, addressed by DA[15:0], and divided into 256 pages, Each page consists of 256 bytes as shown below.


Figure 2-5. Data Memory Map

The data memory page is indexed by SPR and IDH. In data memory index addressing mode, 16-bit data memory address is composed of two 8-bit SPRs, IDH[7:0] and IDL0[7:0] (or IDH[7:0] and IDL1[7:0]). IDH[7:0] points to a page index, and IDL0[7:0] (or IDL1[7:0]) represents the page offset. In data memory direct addressing mode, an 8-bit direct address, adr[7:0], specifies the offset of the page pointed to by IDH[7:0] (See the details for direct addressing mode in the instruction sections). Unlike the program memory organization, data memory address does not wrap around. In other words, data memory index addressing with modification performs an addition or a subtraction operation on the whole 16-bit address of IDH[7:0] and IDL0[7:0] (or IDL1[7:0]) and updates IDH[7:0] and IDL0[7:0] (or IDL1[7:0]) accordingly. Suppose IDH[7:0] is 0FH and IDL0[7:0] is FCH and the modification on the index registers, IDH[7:0] and IDL0[7:0], is increment by 5 H , then, after the modification (i.e., $0 F F \mathrm{FH}+5=1001 \mathrm{H}$ ), IDH[7:0] and IDL0[7:0] become 10 H and 01 H , respectively.

As for the MAC816 coprocessor, the data memory is a word unit (16-bit wide) and is divided to X-memory and Ymemory for DSP instruction.
The address 0080 H in CalmRISC, for example, is viewed as 0040 H by MAC816.

The S3CB519 has a total of 3072 bytes of data register address from 0080H to 0C7FH.
The area from 0000 H to 007 FH is for peripheral control, and LCD RAM area is from 0 C 80 H to 0 CEFH .
The MAC816 views the peripheral control register area as being from 0000 H to 003 FH , and X -memory from 0040 H to $043 F H$, and Y-memory from 0440 H to 063 FH .


Figure 2-6. S3CB519 Data Memory Map

REGISTERS

## OVERVIEW

The registers of CalmRISC are grouped into 2 types: general purpose registers and special purpose registers.
Table 3-1. General and Special Purpose Registers

| Registers |  | Mnemonics | Description | Reset Value |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| General Purpose <br> Registers (GPR) |  | R0 | General Register 0 | Unknown |
|  |  | R1 | General Register 1 | Unknown |
|  |  | R2 | General Register 2 | Unknown |
|  |  | R3 | General Register 3 | Unknown |
| Special Purpose Registers (SPR) | Group 0 (SPRO) | IDL0 | Lower Byte of Index Register 0 | Unknown |
|  |  | IDL1 | Lower Byte of Index Register 1 | Unknown |
|  |  | IDH | Higher Byte of Index Register | Unknown |
|  |  | SR0 | Status Register 0 | 00H |
|  | Group 1 (SPR1) | ILX | Instruction Pointer Link Register for Extended Byte | Unknown |
|  |  | ILH | Instruction Pointer Link Register for Higher Byte | Unknown |
|  |  | ILL | Instruction Pointer Link Register for Lower Byte | Unknown |
|  |  | SR1 | Status Register 1 | Unknown |

GPRs can be used in most instructions such as ALU instructions, stack instructions, load instructions, etc .(See the instruction set sections). From the programming standpoint, they have almost no restriction whatsoever. CalmRISC has 4 banks of GPRs, and each bank has 4 registers, R0, R1, R2, and R3. Hence, 16 GPRs in total are available. The GPR bank can be switched by setting an appropriate value in SR0[4:3] (See SRO for details). The ALU operations between GPRs from different banks are not allowed.

SPRs are designed for their own dedicated purposes. They have some restrictions in terms of instructions that can access them. For example, direct ALU operations cannot be performed on SPRs. However, data transfers between a GPR and an SPR are allowed, and stack operations with SPRs are also possible (See the instruction sections for details).

## INDEX REGISTERS: IDH, IDLO AND IDL1

IDH in concatenation with IDL0 (or IDL1) forms a 16-bit data memory address. Note that CalmRISC's data memory address space is 64 Kbyte (addressable by 16-bit addresses). Basically, IDH points to a page index, and IDL0 (or IDL1) corresponds to an offset of the page. Like GPRs, the index registers are 2-way banked. There are 2 banks in total, each of which has its own index registers, IDH, IDLO and IDL1. The banks of index registers can be switched by setting an appropriate value in SR0[2] (See SR0 for details). Normally, programmers can reserve an index register pair, IDH and IDLO (or IDL1), for software stack operations.

## LINK REGISTERS: ILX, ILH AND ILL

The link registers are specially designed for link-and-branch instructions (See LNK and LRET instructions in the instruction sections for details). When an LNK instruction is executed, the current PC[19:0] is saved into ILX, ILH and ILL registers (i.e., PC[19:16] into ILX[3:0], PC[15:8] into ILH [7:0]) and PC[7:0] into ILL[7:0], respectively. When an LRET instruction is executed, the PC value returned is recovered from ILX, ILH, and ILL (i.e., ILX[3:0] into PC[19:16], ILH[7:0] into PC[15:8] and ILL[7:0] into PC[7:0], respectively). These registers are used to access program memory by LDC instructions. When an LDC instruction is executed, the (code) data residing at the program address specified by ILX:ILH:ILL will be read into TBH:TBL.

There is a special core input pin signal, $n P 64 K W$, which is reserved for indicating that the program memory address space is only 64 Kword. By grounding the signal pin to zero, the upper 4 bits of PC, PC[19:16], is deactivated and therefore its program memory address signals from CalmRISC core are also deactivated. This, in turn, totally eliminates the power consumption due to manipulating the upper 4 bits of PC (See the core pin description section for details). From the programmer's standpoint, when $n P 64 K W$ is tied to the ground level, then PC[19:16] is not saved into ILX for LNK instructions and ILX is not read back into PC[19:16] for LRET instructions. Therefore, ILX is totally unused in LNK and LRET instructions when $n P 64 K W=0$.

## STATUS REGISTER 0: SRO

SR0 is mainly reserved for system control functions, and each bit of SR0 has its own dedicated function.

Table 3-2. Status Register 0 Configuration

| Flag Name | Bit | Description |
| :---: | :---: | :--- |
| eid | 0 | Data memory page selection in direct addressing |
| ie | 1 | Global interrupt enable |
| idb | 2 | Index register banking selection |
| grb[1:0] | 4,3 | GPR bank selection |
| exe | 5 | Stack overflow/underflow exception enable |
| ie0 | 6 | Interrupt 0 enable |
| ie1 | 7 | Interrupt 1 enable |

$\operatorname{SRO} 0]$ (or eid) selects which page index is to be used in direct addressing. If eid $=0$, then page 0 (page index $=0$ ) is used. Otherwise (eid =1), IDH of the current index register bank is used for the page index. SRO[1] (or ie) is the global interrupt enable flag. As explained in the interrupt/exception section, CalmRISC has 3 interrupt sources (nonmaskable interrupt, interrupt 0, and interrupt 1) and 1 stack exception. Both interrupt 0 and interrupt 1 are masked by setting SRO[1] to 0 (i.e., ie $=0$ ). When an interrupt is serviced, the global interrupt enable flag ie is automatically cleared. The execution of an IRET instruction (return from an interrupt service routine) automatically sets ie $=1$. SRO[2] (or idb) and SR0[4:3] (or grb[1:0]) selects an appropriate bank for index registers and GPRs, respectively, as shown below:


Figure 3-1. Bank Selection by Setting of GRB Bits and IDB Bit

SR0[5] (or exe) enables the stack exception, that is, the stack overflow/underflow exception. If exe $=0$, the stack exception is disabled. The stack exception can be used for program debugging in the software development stage. SRO[6] (or ie0) and SR0[7] (or ie1) are enabled, by setting them to 1 . Even though ie0 or ie1 are enabled, the interrupts are ignored (not serviced) if the global interrupt enable flag ie is set to 0 .

## STATUS REGISTER 1: SR1

SR1 is the register for status flags such as ALU execution flag and stack full flag.

Table 3-3. Status Register 1: SR1

| Flag Name | Bit | Description |
| :---: | :---: | :--- |
| C | 0 | Carry flag |
| V | 1 | Overflow flag |
| Z | 2 | Zero flag |
| N | 3 | Negative flag |
| SF | 4 | Stack Full flag |
| - | $5,6,7$ | Reserved |

SR1[0] (or C) is the carry flag of ALU executions. SR1[1] (or V ) is the overflow flag of ALU executions. It is set to 1 if and only if the carry-in into the 8-th bit position of addition/subtraction differs from the carry-out from the 8-th bit position. SR1[2] (or Z) is the zero flag, which is set to 1 if and only if the ALU result is zero. SR1[3] (or N) is the negative flag. Basically, the most significant bit (MSB) of ALU results becomes the N flag. Note, a load instruction into a GPR is considered an ALU instruction. However, if an ALU instruction touches the overflow flag (V) like ADD, SUB, CP, etc, $N$ flag is updated as exclusive-OR of $V$ and the MSB of the ALU result. This implies that even if an ALU operation results in an overflow, N flag is still valid. SR1[4] (or SF) is the stack overflow flag. It is set when the hardware stack is overflowed or underflowed. Programmers can check if the hardware stack has any abnormalities through the stack exception or testing if SF is set (See the hardware stack section for more details).

## NOTE

When an interrupt occurs, the hardware does not save SR0 and SR1, so the software must save the SR1 register values.

## 4 <br> MEMORY MAP

## OVERVIEW

To support the control of peripheral hardware, the addresses of peripheral control registers are memory-mapped to page 0 of the RAM. Memory mapping lets you use a mnemonic as the operand of an instruction at a specific memory location.
In this section, detailed descriptions of the S3CB519 control registers are presented in an easy-to-read format. You can use this section as a quick-reference source when writing application programs.

This memory area can be accessed with the whole method of data memory access.

- If SR0 bit 0 is " 0 " then the accessed register area is always page 0 .
- If SRO bit 0 is " 1 " then the accessed register page is controlled by the proper value of the IDH register.

So if you want to access the memory map area, clear the SR0.0 and use the direct addressing mode.
This method is used for most cases.
The control register is divided into five areas. Here, the system control register area is same in every device.


Figure 4-1. Control Register Area

Table 4-1. Control Registers

| Register Name | Mnemonic | Decimal | Hex | Reset | R/W |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Location $16 \mathrm{H}-1 \mathrm{FH}$ is not mapped |  |  |  |  |  |
| Port 5 data register | P5 | 21 | 15H | OFH | R |
| Port 4 data register | P4 | 20 | 14H | 00H | R/W |
| Port 3 data register | P3 | 19 | 13H | 00H | R/W |
| Port 2 data register | P2 | 18 | 12H | 00H | R/W |
| Port 1 data register | P1 | 17 | 11H | 00H | R/W |
| Port 0 data register | P0 | 16 | 10H | 00H | R/W |
| Locations 0EH and 0FH are not mapped |  |  |  |  |  |
| Watchdog timer control register | WDTCON | 13 | ODH | XOH | R/W |
| Basic timer counter | BTCNT | 12 | OCH | 00H | R |
| Interrupt ID register 1 | IIR1 | 11 | OBH | - | R/W |
| Interrupt priority register 1 | IPR1 | 10 | OAH | - | R/W |
| Interrupt mask register 1 | IMR1 | 9 | 09H | 00H | R/W |
| Interrupt request register 1 | IRQ1 | 8 | 08H | - | R |
| Interrupt ID register 00 | IIR00 | 7 | 07H | - | R/W |
| Interrupt priority register 00 | IPR00 | 6 | 06H | - | R/W |
| Interrupt mask register 00 | IMR00 | 5 | 05H | 00H | R/W |
| Interrupt request register 00 | IRQ00 | 4 | 04H | - | R |
| Oscillator control register | OSCCON | 3 | 03H | 00H | R/W |
| Power control register | PCON | 2 | 02H | 04H | R/W |
| Locations 00 H and 01 H are not mapped |  |  |  |  |  |

## NOTES

1. All the unused and unmapped registers and bits read " 0 ".
2. "-" means undefined.

Table 4-1. Control Registers (Continued)

| Register Name | Mnemonic | Decimal | Hex | Reset | R/W |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Locations 35H-3FH are not mapped |  |  |  |  |  |
| Port 5 control register | P5CON | 52 | 34H | 00H | R/W |
| Locations $31 \mathrm{H}-33 \mathrm{H}$ are not mapped |  |  |  |  |  |
| Port 4 control register | P4CON | 48 | 30 H | 00H | R/W |
| Locations 2DH-2FH are not mapped |  |  |  |  |  |
| Port 3 control register | P3CON | 44 | 2 CH | 00H | R/W |
| Locations 29H-2BH are not mapped |  |  |  |  |  |
| Port 2 control register | P2CON | 40 | 28H | 00H | R/W |
| Locations $26 \mathrm{H}-27 \mathrm{H}$ are not mapped |  |  |  |  |  |
| Port 1 interrupt control register | P1INT | 37 | 25H | 00H | R/W |
| Port 1 control register | P1CON | 36 | 24 H | 00H | R/W |
| Port 0 interrupt edge control register | P0EDGE | 35 | 23 H | 00H | R/W |
| Port 0 interrupt control register | POINT | 34 | 22 H | 00H | R/W |
| Port 0 control register low | POCONL | 33 | 21H | 00H | R/W |
| Port 0 control register high | P0CONH | 32 | 20 H | 00H | R/W |

NOTE: All unused and unmapped registers and bits read " 0 ".

Table 4-1. Control Registers (Concluded)

| Register Name | Mnemonic | Decimal | Hex | Reset | R/W |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Locations $74 \mathrm{H}-7 \mathrm{FH}$ are not mapped |  |  |  |  |  |
| D/A converter data register | DADATA | 115 | 73H | 00H | R/W |
| D/A converter control register | DACON | 114 | 72H | 00H | R/W |
| Battery level detector register | BLDCON | 113 | 71H | 40H | R/W |
| Watch timer control register | WTCON | 112 | 70H | 00H | R/W |
| Locations 5FH-6FH are not mapped |  |  |  |  |  |
| LCD contrast register | LCNST | 94 | 5EH | 00H | R/W |
| LCD mode register | LMOD | 93 | 5DH | 00H | R/W |
| LCD control register | LCON | 92 | 5 CH | OOH | R/W |
| Interrupt ID register 01 | IIR01 | 91 | 5BH | - | R/W |
| Interrupt priority register 01 | IPR01 | 90 | 5AH | - | R/W |
| Interrupt mask register 01 | IMR01 | 89 | 59H | 00H | R/W |
| Interrupt request register 01 | IRQ01 | 88 | 58H | - | R |
| Locations $53 \mathrm{H}-57 \mathrm{H}$ are not mapped |  |  |  |  |  |
| Timer 0 counter | TOCNT | 82 | 52H | - | R |
| Timer 0 data register | TODATA | 81 | 51H | FFH | R/W |
| Timer 0 control register | TOCON | 80 | 50H | 00H | R/W |
| Location 4FH is not mapped |  |  |  |  |  |
| A/D Converter data register, Low byte | ADDATAL | 78 | 4EH | OOH | R |
| A/D Converter data register, High byte | ADDATAH | 77 | 4DH | 00H | R |
| A/D Converter control register | ADCON | 76 | 4 CH | 00H | R/W |
| Location 4BH is not mapped |  |  |  |  |  |
| Serial I/O data register | SIODATA | 74 | 4AH | 00H | R/W |
| Serial I/O pre-scale register | SIOPS | 73 | 49H | OOH | R/W |
| Serial I/O control register | SIOCON | 72 | 48H | OOH | R/W |
| Location 47H is not mapped |  |  |  |  |  |
| Timer B counter | TBCNT | 70 | 46H | - | R |
| Timer B data register | TBDATA | 69 | 45H | FFH | R/W |
| Timer B control register | TBCON | 68 | 44H | 00H | R/W |
| Location 43H is not mapped |  |  |  |  |  |
| Timer A counter | TACNT | 66 | 42H | - | R |
| Timer A data register | TADATA | 65 | 41H | FFH | R/W |
| Timer A control register | TACON | 64 | 40H | 00H | R/W |

## NOTES

1. All unused and unmapped registers and bits read " 0 ".
2. "-" means undefined.

HARDWARE STACK

## OVERVIEW

The hardware stack in CalmRISC has two usages:

- To save and restore the return PC[19:0] on CALL, CALLS, RET, and IRET instructions.
- Temporary storage space for registers on PUSH and POP instructions.

When $\mathrm{PC}[19: 0]$ is saved into or restored from the hardware stack, the access should be 20 bits wide. On the other hand, when a register is pushed into or popped from the hardware stack, the access should be 8 bits wide. Hence, to maximize the efficiency of the stack usage, the hardware stack is divided into 3 parts: the extended stack bank (XSTACK, 4 -bits wide), the odd bank ( 8 -bits wide), and the even bank ( 8 -bits wide).


Figure 5-1. Hardware Stack

The top of the stack (TOS) is pointed to by a stack pointer, called sptr[5:0]. The upper 5 bits of the stack pointer, sptr[5:1], points to the stack level into which either PC[19:0] or a register is saved. For example, if sptr[5:1] is 5 H or TOS is 5 , then level 5 of XSTACK is empty and either level 5 of the odd bank or level 5 of the even bank is empty. In fact, sptr[0], the stack bank selection bit, indicates which bank(s) is empty. If sptr[0] $=0$, both level 5 of the even and the odd banks are empty. On the other hand, if $\operatorname{sptr}[0]=1$, level 5 of the odd bank is empty, but level 5 of the even bank is occupied. This situation is well illustrated in the figure below.


Figure 5-2. Even and Odd Bank Selection Example

As can be seen in the above example, sptr[5:1] is used as the hardware stack pointer when PC[19:0] is pushed or popped and sptr[5:0] as the hardware stack pointer when a register is pushed or popped. Note that XSTACK is used only for storing and retrieving $\mathrm{PC}[19: 16]$. Let us consider the cases where $\mathrm{PC}[19: 0]$ is pushed into the hardware stack (by executing CALL/CALLS instructions or by interrupts/exceptions being served) or is retrieved from the hardware stack (by executing RET/IRET instructions). Regardless of the stack bank selection bit (sptr[0]), TOS of the even bank and the odd bank stores or returns PC[7:0] or PC[15:8], respectively. This is illustrated in the following figures.


Figure 5-3. Stack Operation with PC [19:0]
As can be seen in the figures, when stack operations with PC[19:0] are performed, the stack level pointer sptr[5:1] (not sptr[5:0]) is either incremented by 1 (when PC[19:0] is pushed into the stack) or decremented by 1 (when PC[19:0] is popped from the stack). The stack bank selection bit (sptr[0]) is unchanged. If a CalmRISC core input signal $n P 64 K W$ is 0 , which signifies that only PC[15:0] is meaningful, then any access to XSTACK is totally deactivated from the stack operations with PC. Therefore, XSTACK has no meaning when the input pin signal, $n P 64 K W$, is tied to 0 . In that case, XSTACK doesn't have to even exist. As a matter of fact, XSTACK is not included in CalmRISC core itself and it is interfaced through some specially reserved core pin signals ( $n P U S H$, nSTACK, $X H S I[3: 0], X S H O[3: 0]$ ), if the program address space is more than 64 K words (See the core pin signal section for details).

With regards to stack operations with registers, a similar argument can be made.The only difference is that the data written into or read from the stack are a byte. Hence, the even bank and the odd bank are accessed alternately as shown below.


Figure 5-4. Stack Operation with Registers
When the bank selection bit ( $\operatorname{sptr}[0]$ ) is 0 , then the register is pushed into the even bank and the bank selection bit is set to 1 . In this case, the stack level pointer is unchanged. When the bank selection bit ( $\operatorname{sptr}[0]$ ) is 1 , then the register is pushed into the odd bank, the bank selection bit is set to 0 , and the stack level pointer is incremented by 1. Unlike the push operations of PC[19:0], any data are not written into XSTACK in the register push operations. This is illustrated in the example figures. When a register is pushed into the stack, sptr[5:0] is incremented by 1 (not the stack level pointer sptr[5:1]). The register pop operations are the reverse processes of the register push operations. When a register is popped out of the stack, sptr[5:0] is decremented by 1 (not the stack level pointer sptr[5:1]).

Hardware stack overflow/underflow happens when the MSB of the stack level pointer, sptr[5], is 1. This is obvious from the fact that the hardware stack has only 16 levels and the following relationship holds for the stack level pointer in a normal case.

Suppose the stack level pointer $\operatorname{sptr}[5: 1]=15$ (or 01111B in binary format) and the bank selection bit sptr[0] $=1$. Here if either PC[19:0] or a register is pushed, the stack level pointer is incremented by 1 . Therefore, sptr[5:1] = 16 (or 10000B in binary format) and sptr[5] = 1, which implies that the stack is overflowed. The situation is depicted in the following figure.


Figure 5-5. Stack Overflow
The first overflow happens due to a register push operation. As explained earlier, a register push operation increments $\operatorname{sptr}[5: 0]$ (not $\operatorname{sptr}[5: 1]$ ), which results in $\operatorname{sptr[5]~=~1,~sptr[4:1]~}=0$ and $\operatorname{sptr[0]~=~} 0$. As indicated by $\operatorname{sptr[5]~}$ $=1$, an overflow happens. Note that this overflow doesn't overwrite any data in the stack. On the other hand, when $\operatorname{PC}[19: 0]$ is pushed, $\operatorname{sptr}[5: 1]$ is incremented by 1 instead of sptr[5:0], and as expected, an overflow results. Unlike the first overflow, $\mathrm{PC}[7: 0]$ is pushed into level 0 of the even bank and the data that has been there before the push operation is overwritten. A similar argument can be made about stack underflows. Note that any stack operation, which causes the stack to overflow or underflow, doesn't necessarily mean that any data in the stack are lost, as is observed in the first example.
In SR1, there is a status flag, SF (Stack Full Flag), which is exactly the same as sptr[5]. In other words, the value of sptr[5] can be checked by reading SF (or SR1[4]). SF is not a sticky flag in the sense that if there was a stack overflow/underflow but any following stack access instructions clear sptr[5] to 0, then SF $=0$ and programmers cannot tell whether there was a stack overflow/underflow by reading SF. For example, if a program pushes a register 64 times in a row, $\operatorname{sptr}[5: 0]$ is exactly the same as sptr[5:0] before the push sequence. Therefore, special attention should be paid.

Another mechanism to detect a stack overflow/underflow is through a stack exception. A stack exception happens only when the execution of any stack access instruction results in $\mathrm{SF}=1$ (or $\operatorname{sptr}[5]=1$ ). Suppose a register push operation makes $S F=1$ (the SF value before the push operation doesn't matter). Then the stack exception due to the push operation is immediately generated and served If the stack exception enable flag (exe of SRO) is 1 . If the stack exception enable flag is 0 , then the generated interrupt is not served but pending. Sometime later when the stack exception enable flag is set to 1 , the pending exception request is served even if $\mathrm{SF}=0$. More details are available in the stack exception section.

NOTES

EXCEPTIONS

## OVERVIEW

Exceptions in CalmRISC are listed in the table below. Exception handling routines, residing at the given addresses in the table, are invoked when the corresponding exception occurs. The starting address of each exception routine is specified by concatenating 0 H (leading 4 bits of 0 ) and the 16 -bit data in the exception vector listed in the table. For example, the interrupt service routine for NMI starts from $0 \mathrm{H}: \mathrm{PM}[00001 \mathrm{H}]$. Note that ":" means concatenation and PM[*] stands for the 16-bit content at the address * of the program memory. Aside from the exception due to reset release, the current PC is pushed in the stack on an exception. When an exception is executed due to NMI/IRQ[1:0]/IEXP, the global interrupt enable flag, ie bit (SR0[1]), is set to 0 , whereas ie is set to 1 when IRET or an instruction that explicitly sets ie is executed.

Table 6-1. Exceptions

| Name | Address | Priority | Description |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :--- |
| Reset | 00000 H | 1 st | Exception due to rest release. |
| NMI | 00001 H | 2 nd | Exception due to $n N M I$ signal. Non-maskable. Not used. |
| IRQ[0] | 00002 H | 4 th | Exception due to $n I R Q[0]$ signal. Maskable by setting ie/ie0. |
| IRQ[1] | 00003 H | 5 th | Exception due to $n I R Q[1]$ signal. Maskable by setting ie/ie1. |
| IEXP | 00004 H | 3 rd | Exception due to stack full. Maskable by setting exe. |
| - | 00005 H | - | Reserved. |
| - | 00006 H | - | Reserved. |
|  |  | 00007 H | - |

NOTE: Break mode due to BKREQ has a higher priority than all the exceptions above. That is, when BKREQ is active, even the exception due to reset release is not executed.

## HARDWARE RESET

When Hardware Reset is active (the reset input signal pin nRES = 0), the control pins in the CalmRISC core are initialized to be disabled, and SR0 and sptr (the hardware stack pointer) are initialized to be 0. Additionally, the interrupt sensing block is cleared. When Hardware Reset is released ( $\mathrm{nRES}=1$ ), the reset exception is executed by loading the JP instruction in IR (Instruction Register) and 0h:0000h in PC. Therefore, when Hardware Reset is released, the "JP \{0h:PM[00000h]\}" instruction is executed. When the reset exception is executed, a core output signal $n E X P A C K$ is generated to acknowledge the exception.

## NMI EXCEPTION (EDGE SENSITIVE)

On the falling edge of a core input signal $n N M I$, the NMI exception is executed by loading the CALL instruction in IR and $0 \mathrm{~h}: 0001 \mathrm{~h}$ in PC. Therefore, when NMI exception is activated, the "CALL $\{0 \mathrm{~h}: \mathrm{PM}[00001 \mathrm{~h}]\}$ " instruction is executed. When the NMI exception is executed, the ie bit (SRO[1]) becomes 0 and a core output signal nEXPACK is generated to acknowledge the exception.

## IRQ[0] EXCEPTION (LEVEL-SENSITIVE)

When a core input signal $n I R Q[0]$ is low, $\operatorname{SRO}[6]$ (ie0) is high, and SRO[1] (ie) is high, $\operatorname{IRQ}[0]$ exception is generated, and this will load the CALL instruction in IR (Instruction Register) and 0h:0002h in PC. Therefore, on an IRQ[0] exception, the "CALL \{0h:PM[00002h]\}" instruction is executed. When the IRQ[0] exception is executed, SR0[1] (ie) is set to 0 and a core output signal $n E X P A C K$ is generated to acknowledge the exception.

## IRQ[1] EXCEPTION (LEVEL-SENSITIVE)

When a core input signal $n I R Q[1]$ is low, SRO[7] (ie1) is high, and SR0[1] (ie) is high, IRQ[1] exception is generated, and this will load the CALL instruction in IR (Instruction Register) and 0h:0003h in PC. Therefore, on an IRQ[1] exception, the "CALL \{0h:PM[00003h]\}" instruction is executed. When the IRQ[1] exception is executed, SR0[1] (ie) is set to 0 and a core output signal $n E X P A C K$ is generated to acknowledge the exception.

## HARDWARE STACK FULL EXCEPTION

A Stack Full exception occurs when a stack operation is performed and as a result of the stack operation sptr[5] (SF) is set to 1 . If the stack exception enable bit, exe (SRO[5]), is 1 , the Stack Full exception is served. One exception to this rule is when nNMI causes a stack operation that sets sptr[5] (SF), since it has higher priority.

Handling a Stack Full exception may cause another Stack Full exception. In this case, the new exception is ignored. On a Stack Full exception, the CALL instruction is loaded in IR (Instruction Register) and 0h:0004h in PC. Therefore, when the Stack Full exception is activated, the "CALL \{0h:PM[00004h]\}" instruction is executed. When the exception is executed, SRO[1] (ie) is set to 0 , and a core output signal nEXPACK is generated to acknowledge the exception.

## BREAK EXCEPTION

Break exception is reserved only for an in-circuit debugger. When a core input signal, $B K R E Q$, is high, the CalmRISC core is halted or in the break mode, until BKREQ is deactivated. Another way to drive the CalmRISC core into the break mode is by executing a break instruction, BREAK. When BREAK is fetched, it is decoded in the fetch cycle (IF stage) and the CalmRISC core output signal $n B K A C K$ is generated in the second cycle (ID/MEM stage). An in-circuit debugger generates BKREQ active by monitoring $n B K A C K$ to be active. BREAK instruction is exactly the same as the NOP (no operation) instruction except that it does not increase the program counter and activates nBKACK in the second cycle (or ID/MEM stage of the pipeline). There, once BREAK is encountered in the program execution, it falls into a deadlock. BREAK instruction is reserved for in-circuit debuggers only, so it should not be used in user programs.

## EXCEPTIONS (or INTERRUPTS)



Figure 6-1. Interrupt Structure


Figure 6-2. Interrupt Structure

## INTERRUPT MASK REGISTERS



Figure 6-3. Interrupt Mask Register

## INTERRUPT PRIORITY REGISTER



Figure 6-4. Interrupt Priority Register

## )

PROGRAMMING TIP — Interrupt Programming Tip 1

Jumped from vector 2


NOTE: If the SR0 register is changed in the interrupt service routine, then the SR0 register must be pushed and popped in the interrupt service routine.

## 5

 PROGRAMMING TIP — Interrupt Programming Tip 2Jumped from vector 2

| PUSH | SR1 |
| :--- | :--- |
| PUSH | R0 |
| PUSH | R1 |
| LD | R0, IIR00 |
| SL | R0 |
| LD | R1, < TBL_INTx |
| ADD | R0, > TBL_INTx |
| LD | ILH, R1 |
| LD | ILL, R0 |
| LRET |  |
| LJP | IRQ0_svr |
| LJP | IRQ1_svr |
| LJP | IRQ2_svr |
| LJP | IRQ3_svr |
| LJP | IRQ4_svr |
| LJP | IRQ5_svr |
| LJP | IRQ6_svr |
| LJP | IRQ7_svr |

IRQ0_srv $\quad ; \rightarrow$ service for IRQ0
$\bullet$
POP R1
POP R0
POP SR1

IRET
IRQ1_srv $\quad ; \rightarrow$ service for IRQ1
$\bullet$
POP R1
POP R0
POP SR1

IRET
-

IRQ7_srv
; $\rightarrow$ service for IRQ7
$\bullet$
POP R1
POP RO
POP SR1
IRET

## NOTES:

1. If the SRO register is changed in the interrupt service routine, then the SRO register must be pushed and popped in the interrupt service routine.
2. Above example is assumed that ROM size is less than 64 K -word and all the LJP instructions in the jump table (TBL_INTx) is in the same page.

## 7

## COPROCESSOR INTERFACE

## OVERVIEW

CalmRISC supports an efficient and seamless interface with coprocessors. By integrating a MAC (multiply and accumulate) DSP coprocessor engine with the CalmRISC core, not only the microcontroller functions but also complex digital signal processing algorithms can be implemented in a single development platform (or MDS). CalmRISC has a set of dedicated signal pins, through which data/command/status are exchanged to and from a coprocessor. Depicted below are the coprocessor signal pins and the interface between two processors.


Figure 7-1. Coprocessor Interface Diagram

As shown in the coprocessor interface diagram above, the coprocessor interface signals of CaImRISC are: SYSCP[11:0], nCOPID, nCLDID, nCLDWR, and EC[2:0]. The data are exchanged through data buses, DI[7:0] and DO[7:0]. A command is issued from CalmRISC to a coprocessor through SYSCP[11:0] in COP instructions. The status of a coprocessor can be sent back to CalmRISC through EC[2:0] and these flags can be checked in the condition codes of branch instructions. The coprocessor instructions are listed in the following table

Table 7-1. Coprocessor instructions

| Mnemonic | Op 1 | Op 2 | Description |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| COP | \#imm:12 | - | Coprocessor operation |
| CLD | GPR | imm:8 | Data transfer from coprocessor into GPR |
| CLD | imm:8 | GPR | Data transfer of GPR to coprocessor |
| JP(or JR) <br> CALL <br> LNK | EC2-EC0 | label | Conditional branch with coprocessor status flags |

The coprocessor of CalmRISC does not have its own program memory (i.e., it is a passive coprocessor) as shown in Figure $7-1$. In fact, the coprocessor instructions are fetched and decoded by CalmRISC, and CalmRISC issues the command to the coprocessor through the interface signals. For example, if "COP \#imm:12" instruction is fetched, then the 12 -bit immediate value (imm:12) is loaded on SYSCP[11:0] signal with nCOPID active in ID/MEM stage, to request the coprocessor to perform the designated operation. The interpretation of the 12-bit immediate value is totally up to the coprocessor. By arranging the 12-bit immediate field, the instruction set of the coprocessor is determined. In other words, CalmRISC only provides a set of generic coprocessor instructions, and its installation to a specific coprocessor instruction set can differ from one coprocessor to another. CLD Write instructions ("CLD imm:8, GPR") put the content of a GPR register of CalmRISC on the data bus (DO[7:0]) and issue the address(imm:8) of the coprocessor internal register on SYSCP[7:0] with nCLDID active and CLDWR active. CLD Read instructions ("CLD GPR, imm:8" in Table 7-1) work similarly, except that the content of the coprocessor internal register addressed by the 8 -bit immediate value is read into a GPR register through DI[7:0] with nCLDID active and CLDWR deactivated.

The timing diagram given below is a coprocessor instruction pipeline and shows when the coprocessor performs the required operations. Suppose $\mathrm{t}_{2}$ is a coprocessor instruction. First, it is fetched and decoded by CalmRISC (at $\mathrm{t}=\mathrm{T}(\mathrm{i}-$ 1)). Once it is identified as a coprocessor instruction, CalmRISC indicates to the coprocessor the appropriate command through the coprocessor interface signals (at $\mathrm{t}=\mathrm{T}(\mathrm{i})$ ). Then the coprocessor performs the designated tasks at $t=T(i)$ and $t=T(i+1)$. Hence IF from CalmRISC and then ID/MEM and EX from the coprocessor constitute the pipeline for $I_{2}$. Similarly, if $I_{3}$ is a coprocessor instruction, the coprocessor's ID/MEM and EX stages replace the corresponding stages of CalmRISC.


Figure 7-2. Coprocessor Instruction Pipeline

In a multi-processor system, the data transfer between processors is an important factor to determine the efficiency of the overall system. Suppose an input data stream is accepted by a processor, in order for the data to be shared by another processors. There should be some efficient mechanism to transfer the data to the processors. In CalmRISC, data transfers are accomplished through a single shared data memory. The shared data memory in a multi-processor has some inherent problems such as data hazards and deadlocks. However, the coprocessor in CalmRISC accesses the shared data memory only at the designated time by CalmRISC at which time CalmRISC is guaranteed not to access the data memory, and therefore there is no contention over the shared data memory. Another advantage of the scheme is that the coprocessor can access the data memory in its own bandwidth.

NOTES

## 8

INSTRUCTION SET

## OVERVIEW

## GLOSSARY

This chapter describes the CalmRISC instruction set and the details of each instruction are listed in alphabetical order. The following notations are used for the description.

Table 8-1. Instruction Notation Conventions

| Notation | Interpretation |
| :---: | :--- |
| <opN> | Operand N. N can be omitted if there is only one operand. Typically, <op1> is the <br> destination (and source) operand and <op2> is a source operand. |
| GPR | General Purpose Register |
| SPR | Special Purpose Register (IDL0, IDL1, IDH, SR0, ILX, ILH, ILL, SR1) |
| adr:N | N-bit address specifier |
| @idm | Content of memory location pointed by ID0 or ID1 |
| $($ adr:N) | Content of memory location specified by adr:N |
| cc:4 | 4-bit condition code. Table 8-6 describes cc:4. |
| imm:N | N-bit immediate number |
| $\&$ | Bit-wise AND |
| I | Bit-wise OR |
| $\sim$ | Bit-wise NOT |
| $\wedge$ | Bit-wise XOR |
| $\mathrm{N}^{\star *} \mathrm{M}$ | Mth power of N |
| $(\mathrm{N})_{\mathrm{M}}$ | M-based number N |

As additional note, only the affected flags are described in the tables in this section. That is, if a flag is not affected by an operation, it is NOT specified.

## INSTRUCTION SET MAP

Table 8-2.Overall Instruction Set Map

| IR | [12:10]000 | 001 | 010 | 011 | 100 | 101 | 110 | 111 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{aligned} & \hline[15: 13,7: 2] \\ & 000 \mathrm{xxxxxx} \end{aligned}$ | ADD GPR, \#imm:8 | SUB GPR, \#imm: 8 | CP GPR, <br> \#imm8 | LD GPR, \#imm:8 | TM GPR, \#imm:8 | AND GPR, \#imm: 8 | OR GPR, \#imm: 8 | $\begin{gathered} \text { XOR GPR, } \\ \text { \#imm: } \end{gathered}$ |
| 001 xxxxxx | ADD GPR, @idm | SUB GPR, @idm | CP GPR, @idm | LD GPR, @idm | LD @idm, GPR | AND GPR, @idm | OR GPR, @idm | $\begin{aligned} & \text { XOR GPR, } \\ & \text { @idm } \end{aligned}$ |
| 010 xxxxxx | ADD GPR, adr:8 | SUB GPR, adr:8 | $\begin{gathered} \text { CP GPR, } \\ \text { adr: } 8 \end{gathered}$ | LD GPR, adr:8 | BITT adr:8.bs |  | BITS adr:8.bs |  |
| 011 xxxxxx | ADC GPR, adr:8 | SBC GPR, adr:8 | CPC GPR, adr:8 | LD adr:8, GPR | BITR adr:8.bs |  | BITC adr:8.bs |  |
| 100000000 | ADD GPR, GPR | SUB GPR, GPR | CP GPR, GPR | BMS/BMC | $\begin{gathered} \text { LD SPRO, } \\ \text { \#imm: } \end{gathered}$ | AND GPR, adr:8 | OR GPR, adr:8 | XOR GPR, adr:8 |
| 100000001 | ADC GPR, GPR | SBC GPR, GPR | CPC GPR, GPR | invalid |  |  |  |  |
| 100000010 | invalid | invalid | invalid | invalid |  |  |  |  |
| 100000011 | AND GPR, GPR | OR GPR, GPR | XOR GPR, GPR | invalid |  |  |  |  |
| 100 00010x | SLA/SL/ RLC/RL/ SRA/SR/ RRC/RR/ GPR | $\begin{array}{\|l} \text { INC/INCC/ } \\ \text { DEC/ } \\ \text { DECC/ } \\ \text { COM/ } \\ \text { COM2/ } \\ \text { COMC } \\ \text { GPR } \end{array}$ | invalid | invalid |  |  |  |  |
| 100 00011x | LD SPR, GPR | LD GPR, SPR | SWAP GPR, SPR | $\begin{gathered} \text { LD } \\ \text { TBH/TBL, } \\ \text { GPR } \end{gathered}$ |  |  |  |  |
| 10000100 x | PUSH SPR | POP SPR | invalid | invalid |  |  |  |  |
| 100001010 | PUSH GPR | POP GPR | LD GPR, GPR | LD GPR, TBH/TBL |  |  |  |  |

Table 8-2. Overall Instruction Set Map (Continued)

| IR | [12:10]000 | 001 | 010 | 011 | 100 | 101 | 110 | 111 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 100001011 | POP | invalid | LDC | invalid | LD SPRO, \#imm:8 | AND GPR, adr:8 | $\begin{gathered} \text { OR GPR, } \\ \text { adr:8 } \end{gathered}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \text { XOR } \\ & \text { GPR, } \\ & \text { adr:8 } \end{aligned}$ |
| 100 00110x | RET/LRET/I RET/NOP/ BREAK | invalid | invalid | invalid |  |  |  |  |
| 10000111 x | invalid | invalid | invalid | invalid |  |  |  |  |
| 100 01xxxx | LD GPR:bank, GPR:bank | AND SRO, \#imm: 8 | OR SRO, \#imm: 8 | BANK \#imm:2 |  |  |  |  |
| $\begin{aligned} & 100100000 \\ & 100110011 \end{aligned}$ | invalid | invalid | invalid | invalid |  |  |  |  |
| 100 1101xx | LCALL cc:4, imm:20 (2-word instruction) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 100 1110xx | LLNK cc:4, imm:20 (2-word instruction) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 100 1111xx | LJP cc:4, imm:20 (2-word instruction) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| $\begin{array}{\|l} {[15: 10]} \\ 101 \mathrm{xxx} \end{array}$ | JR cc:4, imm:9 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 110 0xx | CALLS imm:12 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 110 1xx | LNKS imm:12 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 111 xxx | CLD GPR, imm:8 / CLD imm:8, GPR / JNZD GPR, imm:8 / SYS \#imm:8 / COP \#imm:12 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

NOTE: "invalid" - invalid instruction.

Table 8-3. Instruction Encoding

| Instruction | 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 |  | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ADD GPR, \#imm:8 | 000 |  |  |  | 000 |  | GPR |  | imm[7:0] |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| SUB GPR, \#imm:8 |  |  |  |  | 001 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| CP GPR, \#imm:8 |  |  |  |  | 010 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| LD GPR, \#imm:8 |  |  |  |  | 011 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| TM GPR, \#imm:8 |  |  |  |  | 100 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| AND GPR, \#imm: 8 |  |  |  |  | 101 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| OR GPR, \#imm:8 |  |  |  |  | 110 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| XOR GPR, \#imm:8 |  |  |  |  | 111 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ADD GPR, @idm | 001 |  |  |  | 000 |  | GPR |  | idx | mod |  |  | offset[4:0] |  |  |  |  |
| SUB GPR, @idm |  |  |  |  | 001 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| CP GPR, @idm |  |  |  |  | 010 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| LD GPR, @idm |  |  |  |  | 011 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| LD @idm, GPR |  |  |  |  | 100 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| AND GPR, @idm |  |  |  |  | 101 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| OR GPR, @idm |  |  |  |  | 110 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| XOR GPR, @idm |  |  |  |  | 111 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ADD GPR, adr:8 | 010 |  |  |  | 000 |  | GPR |  | $\operatorname{adr}[7: 0]$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| SUB GPR, adr:8 |  |  |  |  | 001 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| CP GPR, adr:8 |  |  |  |  | 010 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| LD GPR, adr:8 |  |  |  |  | 011 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| BITT adr:8.bs |  |  |  |  | 10 | bs |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| BITS adr:8.bs |  |  |  |  | 11 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ADC GPR, adr:8 | 011 |  |  |  | 000 |  | GPR |  | $\operatorname{adr}[7: 0]$ |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| SBC GPR, adr:8 |  |  |  |  | 001 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| CPC GPR, adr:8 |  |  |  |  | 010 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| LD adr:8, GPR |  |  |  |  | 011 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| BITR adr:8.bs |  |  |  |  | 10 | bs |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| BITC adr:8.bs |  |  |  |  | 11 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

Table 8-3. Instruction Encoding (Continued)


NOTE: "x" means not applicable.

Table 8-3. Instruction Encoding (Concluded)


## NOTES:

1. "x" means not applicable.
2. There are several MODop1 codes that can be used, as described in table 8-9.
3. The operand $1(\mathrm{GPR})$ of the instruction JNZD is Bank 3's register.

Table 8-4. Index Code Information ("idx")

| Symbol | Code | Description |
| :---: | :---: | :--- |
| ID0 | 0 | Index 0 IDH:IDL0 |
| ID1 | 1 | Index 1 IDH:IDL1 |

Table 8-5. Index Modification Code Information ("mod")

| Symbol | Code | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :--- |
| @IDx + offset:5 | 00 | DM[IDx], IDx $\leftarrow$ IDx + offset |
| @[IDx - offset:5] | 01 | DM[IDx + (2's complement of offset:5)], <br> IDx $\leftarrow$ IDx $+(2 ' s ~ c o m p l e m e n t ~ o f ~ o f f s e t: 5) ~$ |
| @[IDx + offset:5]! | 10 | DM[IDx + offset], IDx $\leftarrow$ IDx |
| @[IDx - offset:5]! | 11 | DM[IDx + (2's complement of offset:5)], IDx $\leftarrow$ IDx |

NOTE: Carry from IDL is propagated to IDH. In case of @[IDx - offset:5] or @[IDx - offset:5]!, the assembler should convert offset:5 to the 2's complement format to fill the operand field (offset[4:0]).

Furthermore, @[IDx - 0] and @[IDx - 0]! are converted to @[IDx + 0] and @[IDx + 0]!, respectively.

Table 8-6. Condition Code Information ("cc")

| Symbol (cc:4) | Code | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Blank | 0000 | always |
| NC or ULT | 0001 | $C=0$, unsigned less than |
| C or UGE | 0010 | $C=1$, unsigned greater than or equal to |
| Z or EQ | 0011 | $Z=1$, equal to |
| NZ or NE | 0100 | $\mathrm{Z}=0$, not equal to |
| OV | 0101 | $\mathrm{V}=1$, overflow - signed value |
| ULE | 0110 | $\sim \mathrm{C} \mid \mathrm{Z}$, unsigned less than or equal to |
| UGT | 0111 | $C$ \& ~Z, unsigned greater than |
| ZP | 1000 | $N=0$, signed zero or positive |
| MI | 1001 | $N=1$, signed negative |
| PL | 1010 | $\sim N$ \& ~Z, signed positive |
| ZN | 1011 | $\mathrm{Z} \mid \mathrm{N}$, signed zero or negative |
| SF | 1100 | Stack Full |
| EC0-EC2 | 1101-1111 | $E C[0]=1 / E C[1]=1 / E C[2]=1$ |

NOTE: EC[2:0] is an external input (CalmRISC core's point of view) and used as a condition.

Table 8-7. "ALUop1" Code Information

| Symbol | Code |  |
| :--- | :---: | :--- |
| SLA | 000 | arithmetic shift left |
| SL | 001 | shift left |
| RLC | 010 | rotate left with carry |
| RL | 011 | rotate left |
| SRA | 100 | arithmetic shift right |
| SR | 101 | shift right |
| RRC | 110 | rotate right with carry |
| RR | 111 | rotate right |

Table 8-8. "ALUop2" Code Information

| Symbol | Code |  |
| :--- | :---: | :--- |
| INC | 000 | increment |
| INCC | 001 | increment with carry |
| DEC | 010 | decrement |
| DECC | 011 | decrement with carry |
| COM | 100 | 1's complement |
| COM2 | 101 | 2's complement |
| COMC | 110 | 1's complement with carry |
|  | 111 | reserved |

Table 8-9. "MODop1" Code Information

| Symbol | Code |  |
| :--- | :---: | :--- |
| LRET | 000 | return by IL |
| RET | 001 | return by HS |
| IRET | 010 | return from interrupt (by HS) |
| NOP | 011 | no operation |
| BREAK | 100 | reserved for debugger use only |
| - | 101 | reserved |
| - | 110 | reserved |
| - | 111 | reserved |

## QUICK REFERENCE

| Operation | op1 | op2 | Function | Flag | \# of word / cycle |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| AND | GPR | adr:8 | op1 $\leftarrow$ op1 \& op2 | z,n | 1W1C |
| OR |  | \#imm:8 | op1 $\leftarrow$ op1 \| op2 | z,n |  |
| XOR |  | GPR | op1 $\leftarrow \mathrm{op} 1^{\wedge} \mathrm{op} 2$ | z, n |  |
| ADD |  | @idm | op1 $\leftarrow \mathrm{op} 1+\mathrm{op} 2$ | c,z,v,n |  |
| SUB |  |  | $\mathrm{op} 1 \leftarrow \mathrm{op} 1+\sim \mathrm{op} 2+1$ | $\mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n}$ |  |
| CP |  |  | op1 + ~op2 + 1 | $\mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n}$ |  |
| ADC | GPR | GPR | $\mathrm{op} 1 \leftarrow \mathrm{op} 1+\mathrm{op} 2+\mathrm{c}$ | $\mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n}$ |  |
| SBC |  | adr:8 | op1 $\leftarrow$ op1 + ~op2 + c | c,z,v,n |  |
| CPC |  |  | op1 + ~op2 + c | c,z,v,n |  |
| TM | GPR | \#imm:8 | op1 \& op2 | z,n |  |
| BITS | R3 | adr:8.bs | op1 $\leftarrow(\mathrm{op} 2[$ bit] $\leftarrow 1)$ | z |  |
| BITR |  |  | op1 $\leftarrow(\mathrm{op} 2[\mathrm{bit}] \leftarrow 0)$ | z |  |
| BITC |  |  | op1 $\leftarrow \sim(\mathrm{op2}$ [bit]) | z |  |
| BITT |  |  | $\mathrm{z} \leftarrow \sim(\mathrm{op} 2[\mathrm{bit}])$ | z |  |
| BMS/BMC | - | - | $\mathrm{TF} \leftarrow 1 / 0$ | - |  |
| PUSH | GPR | - | HS[sptr] $\leftarrow$ GPR, (sptr $\leftarrow$ sptr + 1) | - |  |
| POP |  |  | GPR $\leftarrow \mathrm{HS}$ [sptr - 1], (sptr $\leftarrow$ sptr - 1) | z,n |  |
| PUSH | SPR | - | HS[sptr] $\leftarrow$ SPR, (sptr $\leftarrow$ sptr + 1) | - |  |
| POP |  |  | SPR $\leftarrow \mathrm{HS}$ [sptr - 1], (sptr $\leftarrow$ sptr - 1) |  |  |
| POP | - | - | sptr $\leftarrow$ sptr - 2 | - |  |


| SLA | GPR | - | $\mathrm{c} \leftarrow \mathrm{op1} 17]$, op1 $\leftarrow\{$ op1[6:0], 0\} | c,z,v,n |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| SL |  |  | $c \leftarrow o p 1[7]$, op1 $\leftarrow\{o p 1[6: 0], 0\}$ | $\mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{n}$ |
| RLC |  |  | $c \leftarrow o p 1[7]$, op1 $\leftarrow\{o p 1[6: 0], \mathrm{c}\}$ | c, z, $n$ |
| RL |  |  | $\mathrm{c} \leftarrow \mathrm{op}[7]$, op $1 \leftarrow\{$ op1[6:0], op1[7]\} | c,z,n |
| SRA |  |  | $\mathrm{c} \leftarrow \mathrm{op}[0]$, op $1 \leftarrow\{$ op1[7],op1[7:1]\} | c,z,n |
| SR |  |  | $c \leftarrow o p 1[0]$, op $1 \leftarrow\{0$, op1[7:1]\} | c, z, $n$ |
| RRC |  |  | $c \leftarrow o p 1[0]$, op1 $\leftarrow\{c$, op1[7:1]\} | c, z, $n$ |
| RR |  |  | $\mathrm{c} \leftarrow \mathrm{op} 1[0], \mathrm{op} 1 \leftarrow\{\mathrm{op} 1[0]$, op1[7:1]\} | c,z,n |
| INC |  |  | op1 $\leftarrow \mathrm{op} 1+1$ | c,z,v,n |
| INCC |  |  | $\mathrm{op} 1 \leftarrow \mathrm{op} 1+\mathrm{c}$ | c,z,v,n |
| DEC |  |  | $\mathrm{op} 1 \leftarrow \mathrm{op} 1+0 \mathrm{FFh}$ | c,z,v,n |
| DECC |  |  | $\mathrm{op} 1 \leftarrow \mathrm{op} 1+0 \mathrm{FFh}+\mathrm{c}$ | c,z,v,n |
| COM |  |  | op1 $\leftarrow \sim$ op1 | $\mathrm{z}, \mathrm{n}$ |
| COM2 |  |  | op1 $\leftarrow \sim$ op $1+1$ | c,z,v,n |
| COMC |  |  | op1 $\leftarrow \sim$ op $1+\mathrm{c}$ | c,z,v,n |

## QUICK REFERENCE (Continued)

| Operation | op1 | op2 | Function | Flag | \# of word / cycle |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| LD | GPR <br> :bank | GPR <br> :bank | $\mathrm{op} 1 \leftarrow \mathrm{op} 2$ | z,n | 1W1C |
| LD | SPR0 | \#imm:8 | op1 $\leftarrow \mathrm{op} 2$ | - |  |
| LD | GPR | GPR <br> SPR <br> adr:8 <br> @idm <br> \#imm:8 <br> TBH/TBL | $\mathrm{op} 1 \leftarrow \mathrm{op} 2$ | z,n |  |
| LD | SPR <br> TBH/TBL | GPR | $\mathrm{op} 1 \leftarrow \mathrm{op} 2$ | - |  |
| LD | adr:8 | GPR | op1 $\leftarrow \mathrm{op} 2$ | - |  |
| LD | @idm | GPR | op1 $\leftarrow \mathrm{op} 2$ | - |  |
| LDC | @IL @IL+ | - | $\begin{aligned} & (\mathrm{TBH}: \mathrm{TBL}) \leftarrow \mathrm{PM}[(\mathrm{ILX}: \mathrm{ILH}: \mathrm{ILL})], \\ & \text { ILL++ if @IL+ } \end{aligned}$ | - | 1W2C |
| AND OR | SR0 | \#imm:8 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { SR0 } \leftarrow \text { SR0 \& op2 } \\ & \text { SR0 } \leftarrow \text { SR0 } \mid \text { op2 } \end{aligned}$ | - | 1W1C |
| BANK | \#imm:2 | - | SRO[4:3] $\leftarrow \mathrm{op} 2$ | - |  |
| SWAP | GPR | SPR | op1 $\leftarrow \mathrm{op} 2$, op2 $\leftarrow$ op1 (excluding SR0/SR1) | - |  |
| LCALL cc | imm:20 | - | If branch taken, push XSTACK, $\mathrm{HS}[15: 0] \leftarrow\{\mathrm{PC}[15: 12], \mathrm{PC}[11: 0]+2\}$ and $\mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{op} 1$ else $\mathrm{PC}[11: 0] \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}[11: 0]+2$ | - | 2W2C |
| LLNK cc | imm:20 | - | If branch taken, $\mathrm{IL}[19: 0] \leftarrow\{\mathrm{PC}[19: 12]$, $\mathrm{PC}[11: 0]+2\}$ and $\mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{op} 1$ else PC[11:0] $\leftarrow \mathrm{PC}[11: 0]+2$ | - |  |
| CALLS | imm:12 | - | push XSTACK, $\mathrm{HS}[15: 0] \leftarrow\{\mathrm{PC}[15: 12]$, $\mathrm{PC}[11: 0]+1\}$ and $\mathrm{PC}[11: 0] \leftarrow \mathrm{op} 1$ | - | 1W2C |
| LNKS | imm:12 | - | $\mathrm{IL}[19: 0] \leftarrow\{\mathrm{PC}[19: 12], \mathrm{PC}[11: 0]+1\}$ and $\mathrm{PC}[11: 0] \leftarrow \mathrm{op} 1$ | - |  |
| JNZD | Rn | imm:8 | if $(R n==0) \mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}$ [delay slot] - 2's complement of imm:8, Rn-else PC $\leftarrow$ PC[delay slot]++, Rn-- | - |  |
| LJP cc | imm:20 | - | If branch taken, $\mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{op} 1$ else PC[11:0] < PC[11:0] + 2 | - | 2W2C |
| JR cc | imm:9 | - | If branch taken, $\mathrm{PC}[11: 0] \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}[11: 0]+\mathrm{op} 1$ else $\mathrm{PC}[11: 0] \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}[11: 0]+1$ | - | 1W2C |

NOTE: op1-operand1, op2-operand2, 1W1C-1-Word 1-Cycle instruction, 1W2C-1-Word 2-Cycle instruction, 2W2C -2-Word 2-Cycle instruction. The Rn of instruction JNZD is Bank 3's GPR.

## QUICK REFERENCE (Concluded)

| Operation | op1 | op2 | Function | Flag | \# of word / cycle |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| LRET <br> RET <br> IRET <br> NOP <br> BREAK | - | - | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{IL}[19: 0] \\ & \mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{HS}[\text { sptr }-2], \text { (sptr } \leftarrow \text { sptr }-2) \\ & \mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{HS}[\text { sptr }-2] \text {, (sptr } \leftarrow \text { sptr }-2) \\ & \text { no operation } \\ & \text { no operation and hold PC } \end{aligned}$ | - | 1W2C <br> 1W2C <br> 1W2C <br> 1W1C <br> 1W1C |
| SYS | \#imm:8 | - | no operation but generates SYSCP[7:0] and nSYSID | - | 1W1C |
| CLD | imm:8 | GPR | op1 $\leftarrow$ op2, generates SYSCP[7:0], nCLDID, and CLDWR | - |  |
| CLD | GPR | imm:8 | op1 $\leftarrow$ op2, generates SYSCP[7:0], nCLDID, and CLDWR | z,n |  |
| COP | \#imm:12 | - | generates SYSCP[11:0] and nCOPID | - |  |

## NOTES:

1. op1-operand1, op2-operand2, sptr - stack pointer register, 1W1C-1-Word 1-Cycle instruction, 1W2C - 1-Word 2-Cycle instruction
2. Pseudo instructions

- SCF/RCF

Carry flag set or reset instruction

- STOP/IDLE

MCU power saving instructions

- EI/DI

Exception enable and disable instructions

- JP/LNK/CALL

If JR/LNKS/CALLS commands (1 word instructions) can access the target address, there is no conditional code in the case of CALL/LNK, and the JP/LNK/CALL commands are assembled to JR/LNKS/CALLS in linking time,
or else the JP/LNK/CALL commands are assembled to LJP/LLNK/LCALL (2 word instructions) instructions.

## INSTRUCTION GROUP SUMMARY

## ALU INSTRUCTIONS

"ALU instructions" refer to the operations that use ALU to generate results. ALU instructions update the values in Status Register 1 (SR1), namely carry (C), zero (Z), overflow (V), and negative (N), depending on the operation type and the result.

## ALUop GPR, adr:8

Performs an ALU operation on the value in GPR and the value in DM[adr:8] and stores the result into GPR. ALUop = ADD, SUB, CP, AND, OR, XOR
For SUB and CP, GPR+(not DM[adr:8])+1 is performed. adr:8 is the offset in a specific data memory page.

The data memory page is 0 or the value of IDH (Index of Data Memory Higher Byte Register), depending on the value of eid in Status Register 0 (SRO).

## Operation

GPR $\leftarrow$ GPR ALUop DM[00h:adr:8] if eid $=0$
GPR $\leftarrow$ GPR ALUop DM[IDH:adr8] if eid $=1$
Note that this is an 8-bit operation.

## Example

ADD R0, 80h // Assume eid $=1$ and IDH $=01 \mathrm{H}$ // R0 $\leftarrow$ R0 + DM[0180h]

## ALUop GPR, \#imm:8

Stores the result of an ALU operation on GPR and an 8-bit immediate value into GPR.
ALUop = ADD, SUB, CP, AND, OR, XOR
For SUB and CP, GPR+(not \#imm:8)+1 is performed. \#imm:8 is an 8-bit immediate value.

## Operation

$$
\text { GPR } \leftarrow \text { GPR ALUop \#imm:8 }
$$

## Example

$$
\text { ADD R0, \#7Ah } \quad / / \mathrm{R} 0 \leftarrow \mathrm{R} 0+7 \mathrm{Ah}
$$

## ALUop GPRd, GPRs

Store the result of ALUop on GPRs and GPRd into GPRd.
ALUop = ADD, SUB, CP, AND, OR, XOR
For SUB and CP, GPRd + (not GPRs) +1 is performed.
GPRs and GPRd need not be distinct.

## Operation

$$
\text { GPRd } \leftarrow \text { GPRd ALUop GPRs }
$$

GPRd - GPRs when ALUop = CP (comparison only)

## Example

$$
\text { ADD R0, R1 } \quad / / \mathrm{R} 0 \leftarrow \mathrm{R} 0+\mathrm{R} 1
$$

## ALUop GPR, @idm

Performs ALUop on the value in GPR and DM[ID] and stores the result into GPR. Index register ID is IDH:IDL (IDH:IDL0 or IDH:IDL1).
ALUop = ADD, SUB, CP, AND, OR, XOR
For SUB and CP, GPR+(not DM[idm])+1 is performed.
idm = IDx+off:5, [IDx-offset:5], [IDx+offset:5]!, [IDx-offset:5]!
(IDx = ID0 or ID1)

## Operation

GPR - DM[idm] when ALUop = CP (comparison only)
GPR $\leftarrow$ GPR ALUop DM[IDx], IDx $\leftarrow$ IDx + offset:5 when idm = IDx + offset:5
GPR $\leftarrow$ GPR ALUop DM[IDx - offset:5], IDx $\leftarrow$ IDx - offset:5 when idm $=$ [IDx - offset:5]
GPR $\leftarrow$ GPR ALUop DM[IDx + offset:5] when idm $=$ [IDx + offset:5]!
GPR $\leftarrow$ GPR ALUop DM[IDx - offset:5] when idm = [IDx - offset:5]!
When carry is generated from IDL (on a post-increment or pre-decrement), it is propagated to IDH.

## Example

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { ADD R0, @ID0+2 } & \text { // assume ID0 }=02 F F h \\
& / / \text { R0 } \leftarrow \text { R0 }+ \text { DM[02FFh], IDH } \leftarrow 03 \mathrm{~h} \text { and IDL0 } \leftarrow 01 \mathrm{~h} \\
\text { ADD R0, @[ID0-2] } & \text { I/ assume ID0 }=0201 \mathrm{~h} \\
& \text { // R0 } \leftarrow \text { R0 }+ \text { DM[01FFh], IDH } \leftarrow 01 \mathrm{~h} \text { and IDL0 } \leftarrow \text { FFh } \\
\text { ADD R0, @[ID1+2]! } & / / \text { assume ID1 }=02 F F h \\
& / / \text { R0 } \leftarrow \text { R0 }+ \text { DM[0301], IDH } \leftarrow 02 h \text { and IDL1 } \leftarrow \text { FFh } \\
\text { ADD R0, @[ID1-2]! } & / / \text { assume ID1 }=0200 \mathrm{~h} \\
& / / \text { R0 } \leftarrow \text { R0 }+ \text { DM[01FEh], IDH } \leftarrow 02 h \text { and IDL1 } \leftarrow 00 h
\end{array}
$$

## ALUopc GPRd, GPRs

Performs ALUop with carry on GPRd and GPRs and stores the result into GPRd.
ALUopc = ADC, SBC, CPC
GPRd and GPRs need not be distinct.

## Operation

GPRd $\leftarrow$ GPRd + GPRs + C when ALUopc $=$ ADC
GPRd $\leftarrow$ GPRd $+($ not GPRs $)+$ C when ALUopc $=$ SBC
GPRd $+($ not GPRs $)+C$ when ALUopc $=C P C$ (comparison only)

## Example

ADD R0, R2
ADC R1, R3

SBC R1, R3
CP R0, R2
CPC R1, R3

SUB R0, R2 // assume R1:R0 and R3:R2 are 16-bit signed or unsigned numbers.
// assume R1:R0 and R3:R2 are 16-bit signed or unsigned numbers. // to add two 16-bit numbers, use ADD and ADC. // to subtract two 16-bit numbers, use SUB and SBC.
// assume both R1:R0 and R3:R2 are 16-bit unsigned numbers. // to compare two 16-bit unsigned numbers, use CP and CPC.

## ALUopc GPR, adr:8

Performs ALUop with carry on GPR and DM[adr:8].

## Operation

GPR $\leftarrow$ GPR + DM[adr:8] + C when ALUopc = ADC
GPR $\leftarrow$ GPR + (not DM[adr:8]) + C when ALUopc $=$ SBC
GPR + (not DM[adr:8]) + C when ALUopc = CPC (comparison only)

## CPLop GPR (Complement Operations)

CPLop = COM, COM2, COMC

## Operation

COM GPR not GPR (logical complement)
COM2 GPR not GPR + 1 (2's complement of GPR)
COMC GPR not GPR + C (logical complement of GPR with carry)

## Example

COM2 R0 // assume R1:R0 is a 16-bit signed number.
COMC R1 // COM2 and COMC can be used to get the 2's complement of it.

## SAMSUNF

## IncDec GPR (Increment/Decrement Operations)

IncDec = INC, INCC, DEC, DECC

## Operation

| INC GPR | Increase GPR, i.e., GPR $\leftarrow G P R+1$ |
| :--- | :--- |
| INCC GPR | Increase GPR if carry $=1$, i.e., GPR $\leftarrow G P R+C$ |
| DEC GPR |  |
| DECC GPR | Decrease GPR, i.e., GPR $\leftarrow G P R+$ FFh |
|  | Decrease GPR if carry $=0$, i.e., GPR $\leftarrow G P R+$ FFh + C |

## Example

| INC R0 | // assume R1:R0 is a 16-bit number |
| :--- | :--- |
| INCC R1 | // to increase R1:R0, use INC and INCC. |
| DEC R0 | // assume R1:R0 is a 16-bit number |
| DECC R1 | // to decrease R1:R0, use DEC and DECC. |

## SHIFT/ROTATE INSTRUCTIONS

Shift (Rotate) instructions shift (rotate) the given operand by 1 bit. Depending on the operation performed, a number of Status Register 1 (SR1) bits, namely Carry (C), Zero (Z), Overflow (V), and Negative (N), are set.

## SL GPR

## Operation



Carry (C) is the MSB of GPR before shifting, Negative $(N)$ is the MSB of GPR after shifting. Overflow $(\mathrm{V})$ is not affected. Zero $(\mathrm{Z})$ will be 1 if the result is 0 .

## SLA GPR

## Operation



Carry (C) is the MSB of GPR before shifting, Negative (N) is the MSB of GPR after shifting. Overflow (V) will be 1 if the MSB of the result is different from C . Z will be 1 if the result is 0 .

## RL GPR

## Operation



Carry (C) is the MSB of GPR before rotating. Negative (N) is the MSB of GPR after rotatin/g. Overflow $(\mathrm{V})$ is not affected. Zero $(\mathrm{Z})$ will be 1 if the result is 0 .

## RLC GPR

## Operation



Carry (C) is the MSB of GPR before rotating, Negative $(\mathrm{N})$ is the MSB of GPR after rotating. Overflow $(\mathrm{V})$ is not affected. Zero $(\mathrm{Z})$ will be 1 if the result is 0 .

## SR GPR

## Operation



Carry (C) is the LSB of GPR before shifting, Negative (N) is the MSB of GPR after shifting. Overflow $(\mathrm{V})$ is not affected. Zero $(\mathrm{Z})$ will be 1 if the result is 0 .

## SRA GPR

## Operation



Carry (C) is the LSB of GPR before shifting, Negative (N) is the MSB of GPR after shifting. Overflow (V) is not affected. $Z$ will be 1 if the result is 0 .

## RR GPR

## Operation



Carry (C) is the LSB of GPR before rotating. Negative (N) is the MSB of GPR after rotating. Overflow $(\mathrm{V})$ is not affected. Zero $(\mathrm{Z})$ will be 1 if the result is 0 .

## RRC GPR

## Operation



Carry (C) is the LSB of GPR before rotating, Negative (N) is the MSB of GPR after rotating. Overflow $(\mathrm{V})$ is not affected. Zero $(\mathrm{Z})$ will be 1 if the result is 0 .

## LOAD INSTRUCTIONS

Load instructions transfer data from data memory to a register or from a register to data memory, or assigns an immediate value into a register. As a side effect, a load instruction placing a value into a register sets the Zero (Z) and Negative ( N ) bits in Status Register 1 (SR1), if the placed data is 00 h and the MSB of the data is 1, respectively.

## LD GPR, adr:8

Loads the value of DM[adr:8] into GPR. Adr:8 is offset in the page specified by the value of eid in Status Register 0 (SR0).

## Operation

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { GPR } \leftarrow \text { DM[00h:adr:8] } & \text { if eid }=0 \\
\text { GPR } \leftarrow \text { DM[IDH:adr:8] } & \text { if eid }=1
\end{array}
$$

Note that this is an 8-bit operation.

## Example

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { LD R0, 80h } & \text { // assume eid }=1 \text { and IDH }=01 \mathrm{H} \\
& / / \text { R0 } \leftarrow \text { DM[0180h] }
\end{array}
$$

## LD GPR, @idm

Loads a value from the data memory location specified by @idm into GPR.
idm = IDx+off:5, [IDx-offset:5], [IDx+offset:5]!, [IDx-offset:5]!
(IDx = ID0 or ID1)

## Operation

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { GPR } \leftarrow \text { DM[IDx], IDx } \leftarrow \text { IDx }+ \text { offset: } 5 \text { when idm }=\text { IDx }+ \text { offset:5 } \\
& \text { GPR } \leftarrow \text { DM[IDx - offset:5], IDx } \leftarrow \text { IDx - offset: } 5 \text { when idm }=\text { [IDx - offset:5] } \\
& \text { GPR } \leftarrow \text { DM[IDx + offset:5] when idm = [IDx }+ \text { offset:5]! } \\
& \text { GPR } \leftarrow \text { DM[IDx - offset:5] when idm = [IDx - offset:5]! }
\end{aligned}
$$

When carry is generated from IDL (on a post-increment or pre-decrement), it is propagated to IDH.

## Example

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { LD R0, @[ID0 + 03h]! } & \text { // assume IDH:IDL0 }=0270 h \\
& / / \text { R0 } \leftarrow \text { DM[0273h], IDH:IDL0 } \leftarrow 0270 h
\end{array}
$$

## LD REG, \#imm:8

Loads an 8-bit immediate value into REG. REG can be either GPR or an SPR0 group register - IDH (Index of Data Memory Higher Byte Register), IDL0 (Index of Data Memory Lower Byte Register)/ IDL1, and Status Register 0 (SRO). \#imm:8 is an 8-bit immediate value.

## Operation

$$
\text { REG } \leftarrow \text { \#imm:8 }
$$

## Example

$$
\begin{array}{lc}
\text { LD R0 \#7Ah } & / / \mathrm{RO} \leftarrow 7 \mathrm{Ah} \\
\text { LD IDH, \#03h } & / / \text { IDH } \leftarrow 03 \mathrm{~h}
\end{array}
$$

## LD GPR:bs:2, GPR:bs:2

Loads a value of a register from a specified bank into another register in a specified bank.

## Example

LD R0:1, R2:3 // R0 in bank 1, R2 in bank 3

## LD GPR, TBH/TBL

Loads the value of TBH or TBL into GPR. TBH and TBL are 8-bit long registers used exclusively for LDC instructions that access program memory. Therefore, after an LDC instruction, LD GPR, TBH/TBL instruction will usually move the data into GPRs, to be used for other operations.

## Operation

$$
\mathrm{GPR} \leftarrow \mathrm{TBH}(\text { or TBL) }
$$

## Example

LDC @IL // gets a program memory item residing @ ILX:ILH:ILL
LD R0, TBH
LD R1, TBL

## LD TBH/TBL, GPR

Loads the value of GPR into TBH or TBL. These instructions are used in pair in interrupt service routines to save and restore the values in TBH/TBL as needed.

## Operation

$$
\text { TBH }(\text { or } \mathrm{TBL}) \leftarrow \mathrm{GPR}
$$

## LD GPR, SPR

Loads the value of SPR into GPR.

## Operation

$$
\mathrm{GPR} \leftarrow \mathrm{SPR}
$$

## Example

$$
\text { LD R0, IDH } \quad / / \mathrm{RO} \leftarrow \mathrm{IDH}
$$

## LD SPR, GPR

Loads the value of GPR into SPR.

## Operation

$$
\mathrm{SPR} \leftarrow \mathrm{GPR}
$$

## Example

$$
\text { LD IDH, R0 } / / \mathrm{IDH} \leftarrow \mathrm{R} 0
$$

## LD adr:8, GPR

Stores the value of GPR into data memory (DM). adr:8 is offset in the page specified by the value of eid in Status Register 0 (SRO).

## Operation

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { DM[00h:adr:8] } \leftarrow \text { GPR if eid }=0 \\
& \text { DM[IDH:adr:8] } \leftarrow \text { GPR if eid }=1
\end{aligned}
$$

Note that this is an 8-bit operation.

## Example

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { LD 7Ah, R0 } & \text { // assume eid }=1 \text { and } I D H=02 h . \\
& / / \text { DM[027Ah] } \leftarrow \text { R0 }
\end{array}
$$

## LD @idm, GPR

Loads a value into the data memory location specified by @idm from GPR.
idm = IDx+off:5, [IDx-offset:5], [IDx+offset:5]!, [IDx-offset:5]!
(IDx = ID0 or ID1)

## Operation

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { DM[IDx] } \leftarrow \text { GPR, IDx } \leftarrow \text { IDx + offset: } 5 \text { when idm }=\text { IDx }+ \text { offset: } 5 \\
& \text { DM[IDx - offset: } 5] \leftarrow \text { GPR, IDx } \leftarrow \text { IDx - offset:5 when idm }=[\text { IDx - offset:5] } \\
& \text { DM[IDx + offset: } 5] \leftarrow \text { GPR when idm }=[\text { IDx }+ \text { offset: } 5]! \\
& \text { DM[IDx - offset: } 5] \leftarrow \text { GPR when idm }=[\text { IDx - offset:5]! }
\end{aligned}
$$

When carry is generated from IDL (on a post-increment or pre-decrement), it is propagated to IDH.

## Example

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { LD @[ID0 + 03h]!, R0 } & \text { // assume IDH:IDLO }=0170 h \\
& / / \text { DM[0173h] } \leftarrow \text { R0, IDH:IDL0 } \leftarrow 0170 h
\end{array}
$$

## BRANCH INSTRUCTIONS

Branch instructions can be categorized into jump instruction, link instruction, and call instruction. A jump instruction does not save the current PC, whereas a call instruction saves ("pushes") the current PC onto the stack and a link instruction saves the PC in the link register IL. Status registers are not affected. Each instruction type has a 2-word format that supports a 20 -bit long jump.

## JR cc:4, imm:9

imm:9 is a signed number ( 2 's complement), an offset to be added to the current PC to compute the target (PC[19:12]:(PC[11:0] + imm:9)).

## Operation

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\mathrm{PC}[11: 0] \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}[11: 0]+\text { imm:9 } & \text { if branch taken (i.e., cc:4 resolves to be true) } \\
\mathrm{PC}[11: 0] \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}[11: 0]+1 & \text { otherwise }
\end{array}
$$

## Example

L18411: // assume current PC=18411h.
JR Z, 107h // next PC is $18518(18411 \mathrm{~h}+107 \mathrm{~h})$ if Zero $(Z)$ bit is set.

## LJP cc:4, imm:20

Jumps to the program address specified by imm:20. If program size is less than 64 K word, $\mathrm{PC}[19: 16]$ is not affected.

## Operation

$\mathrm{PC}[15: 0] \leftarrow$ imm[15:0] if branch taken and program size is less than 64 K word
$\mathrm{PC}[19: 0] \leftarrow$ imm [19:0] if branch taken and program size is equal to 64 K word or more
$\mathrm{PC}[11: 0] \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}[11: 0]+1$ otherwise

## Example

L18411: // assume current PC = 18411h.
LJP Z, 10107h // next instruction's PC is 10107 h If Zero $(Z)$ bit is set

## JNZD Rn, imm:8

Jumps to the program address specified by imm: 8 if the value of the bank 3 register Rn is not zero. JNZD performs only backward jumps, with the value of Rn automatically decreased. There is one delay slot following the JNZD instruction that is always executed, regardless of whether JNZD is taken or not.

## Operation

If $(\mathrm{Rn}==0) \mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}[$ delay slot] (-) 2's complement of imm: $8, \mathrm{Rn} \leftarrow \mathrm{Rn}-1$ else $\mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}[$ delay slot] $+1, R n \leftarrow R n-1$.

## Example

LOOP_A: // start of loop body
-
-
JNZD R0, LOOP_A // jump back to LOOP_A if R0 is not zero ADD R1, \#2 // delay slot, always executed (you must use one cycle instruction only)

## CALLS imm:12

Saves the current PC on the stack ("pushes" PC) and jumps to the program address specified by imm:12. The current page number PC[19:12] is not changed. Since this is a 1-word instruction, the return address pushed onto the stack is $(P C+1)$. If nP64KW is low when PC is saved, $\mathrm{PC}[19: 16]$ is not saved in the stack.

## Operation

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { HS[sptr][15:0] } \leftarrow \text { current PC }+1 \text { and sptr } \leftarrow \text { sptr }+2 \text { (push stack) } & \text { if nP64KW }=0 \\
\text { HS[sptr][19:0] } \leftarrow \text { current PC }+1 \text { and sptr } \leftarrow \text { sptr }+2 \text { (push stack) } & \text { if } n P 64 \mathrm{KW}=1
\end{array}
$$

$$
\mathrm{PC}[11: 0] \leftarrow \text { imm:12 }
$$

## Example

L18411:
CALLS 107h
// assume current PC=18411h.
// call the subroutine at 18107h, with the current PC pushed // onto the stack ( $\mathrm{HS} \leftarrow 18412 \mathrm{~h}$ ) if $\mathrm{nP} 64 \mathrm{KW}=1$.

## LCALL cc:4, imm:20

Saves the current PC onto the stack (pushes PC) and jumps to the program address specified by imm:20. Since this is a 2-word instruction, the return address saved in the stack is (PC + 2). If nP64KW, a core input signal is low when PC is saved, $0000111111 \mathrm{PC}[19: 16]$ is not saved in the stack and PC[19:16] is not set to imm[19:16].

## Operation

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { HS[sptr][15:0] } \leftarrow \text { current PC }+2 \text { and sptr }+2 \text { (push stack) } \\
& \text { if branch taken and nP64KW }=0 \\
& \text { HS[sptr] }][19: 0] \leftarrow \text { current } \mathrm{PC}+2 \text { and sptr }+2 \text { (push stack) } \\
& \text { PC branch taken and } n P 64 \mathrm{KW}=1 \\
& \mathrm{PC}[15: 0] \leftarrow \text { imm }[15: 0] \leftarrow \text { imm }[19: 0] \quad \text { if branch taken and } \mathrm{nP} 64 \mathrm{KW}=0 \\
& \mathrm{PC}[11: 0] \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}[11: 0]+2 \text { otherwise }
\end{aligned}
$$

## Example

L18411:
LCALL NZ, 10107h // call the subroutine at 10107h with the current PC pushed
// onto the stack (HS $\leftarrow$ 18413h)

## LNKS imm:12

Saves the current PC in IL and jumps to the program address specified by imm:12. The current page number $\mathrm{PC}[19: 12]$ is not changed. Since this is a 1 -word instruction, the return address saved in IL is $(\mathrm{PC}+1)$. If the program size is less than 64K word when PC is saved, PC[19:16] is not saved in ILX.

## Operation

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\mathrm{IL}[15: 0] \leftarrow \text { current PC + } 1 & \text { if program size is less than } 64 \mathrm{~K} \text { word } \\
\mathrm{IL}[19: 0] \leftarrow \text { current PC + } 1 & \text { if program size is equal to } 64 \mathrm{~K} \text { word or more }
\end{array}
$$

## Example

L18411: // assume current PC = 18411h.
LNKS 107h // call the subroutine at 18107h, with the current PC saved // in IL (IL[19:0] $\leftarrow 18412 \mathrm{~h}$ ) if program size is 64 K word or more.

## LLNK cc:4, imm:20

Saves the current PC in IL and jumps to the program address specified by imm:20. Since this is a 2-word instruction, the return address saved in IL is (PC + 2). If the program size is less than 64 K word when PC is saved, PC[19:16] is not saved in ILX.

## Operation

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \mathrm{IL}[15: 0] \leftarrow \text { current PC }+2 \text { if branch taken and program size is less than } 64 \mathrm{~K} \text { word } \\
& \mathrm{IL}[19: 0] \leftarrow \text { current } \mathrm{PC}+2 \text { if branch taken and program size is } 64 \mathrm{~K} \text { word or more } \\
& \mathrm{PC}[15: 0] \leftarrow \text { imm }[15: 0] \quad \text { if branch taken and program size is less than } 64 \mathrm{~K} \text { word } \\
& \mathrm{PC}[19: 0] \leftarrow \text { imm[19:0] if branch taken and program size is } 64 \mathrm{~K} \text { word or more } \\
& \mathrm{PC}[11: 0] \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}[11: 0]+2 \text { otherwise }
\end{aligned}
$$

## Example

L18411: // assume current PC = 18411h.
LLNK NZ, 10107h // call the subroutine at 10107 h with the current PC saved
// in IL (IL[19:0] $\leftarrow 18413 \mathrm{~h}$ ) if program size is 64 K word or more

## RET, IRET

Returns from the current subroutine. IRET sets ie (SRO[1]) in addition. If the program size is less than 64K word, $\operatorname{PC}[19: 16]$ is not loaded from HS[19:16].

## Operation

$\mathrm{PC}[15: 0] \leftarrow \mathrm{HS}[$ sptr -2$]$ and sptr $\leftarrow$ sptr -2 (pop stack) if program size is less than 64K word
$\mathrm{PC}[19: 0] \leftarrow \mathrm{HS}[$ sptr -2$]$ and sptr $\leftarrow$ sptr -2 (pop stack) if program size is 64 K word or more

## Example

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { RET } & \text { // assume sptr }=3 \mathrm{~h} \text { and } \mathrm{HS}[1]=18407 \mathrm{~h} . \\
& \text { // the next PC will be } 18407 \mathrm{~h} \text { and sptr is set to } 1 \mathrm{~h}
\end{array}
$$

## LRET

Returns from the current subroutine, using the link register IL. If the program size is less than 64 K word, $\mathrm{PC}[19: 16]$ is not loaded from ILX.

## Operation

$\mathrm{PC}[15: 0] \leftarrow \mathrm{IL}[15: 0] \quad$ if program size is less than 64 K word
$\mathrm{PC}[19: 0] \leftarrow \mathrm{IL}[19: 0] \quad$ if program size is 64 K word or more

## Example

LRET // assume IL = 18407h.
// the next instruction to execute is at $\mathrm{PC}=18407 \mathrm{~h}$
// if program size is 64 K word or more

## JP/LNK/CALL

JP/LNK/CALL instructions are pseudo instructions. If JR/LNKS/CALLS commands (1 word instructions) can access the target address, there is no conditional code in the case of CALL/LNK and the JP/LNK/CALL commands are assembled to JR/LNKS/CALLS in linking time or else the JP/LNK/CALL commands are assembled to LJP/LLNK/LCALL (2 word instructions) instructions.

## BIT MANIPULATION INSTRUCTIONS

## BITop adr:8.bs

Performs a bit operation specified by op on the value in the data memory pointed by adr:8 and stores the result into R3 of current GPR bank or back into memory depending on the value of TF bit.

BITop = BITS, BITR, BITC, BITT
BITS: bit set
BITR: bit reset
BITC: bit complement
BITT: bit test (R3 is not touched in this case)
bs: bit location specifier, 0-7.

## Operation

R3 $\leftarrow$ DM[00h:adr:8] BITop bs if eid $=0$
R3 $\leftarrow$ DM[IDH:adr:8] BITop bs if eid $=1$ (no register transfer for BITT)
Set the Zero $(Z)$ bit if the result is 0 .

## Example

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { BITS 25h. } 3 & \text { // assume eid }=0 \text {. set bit } 3 \text { of DM[00h:25h] and store the result in R3. } \\
\text { BITT 25h. } 3 & \text { // check bit } 3 \text { of DM[00h:25h] if eid }=0 .
\end{array}
$$

## BMC/BMS

Clears or sets the TF bit, which is used to determine the destination of BITop instructions. When TF bit is clear, the result of BITop instructions will be stored into R3 (fixed); if the TF bit is set, the result will be written back to memory.

## Operation

| $\mathrm{TF} \leftarrow 0$ | (BMC) |
| :--- | :--- |
| $\mathrm{TF} \leftarrow 1$ | (BMS) |

## TM GPR, \#imm:8

Performs AND operation on GPR and imm:8 and sets the Zero $(Z)$ and Negative (N) bits. No change in GPR.

## Operation

$$
\text { Z, N flag } \leftarrow \text { GPR \& \#imm:8 }
$$

## BITop GPR.bs

Performs a bit operation on GPR and stores the result in GPR.
Since the equivalent functionality can be achieved using OR GPR, \#imm:8, AND GPR, \#imm:8, and XOR GPR, \#imm:8, this instruction type doesn't have separate op codes.

## AND SR0, \#imm:8/OR SRO, \#imm:8

Sets/resets bits in SR0 and stores the result back into SR0.

## Operation

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { SR0 } \leftarrow \text { SRO \& \#imm:8 } \\
& \text { SR0 } \leftarrow \text { SR0 } \mid \# \text { imm: } 8
\end{aligned}
$$

BANK \#imm:2
Loads SR0[4:3] with \#imm[1:0].

## Operation

$$
\mathrm{SR} 0[4: 3] \leftarrow \# \operatorname{imm}[1: 0]
$$

## MISCELLANEOUS INSTRUCTION

## SWAP GPR, SPR

Swaps the values in GPR and SPR. SR0 and SR1 can NOT be used for this instruction. No flag is updated, even though the destination is GPR.

## Operation

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { temp } \leftarrow \mathrm{SPR} \\
& \mathrm{SPR} \leftarrow \mathrm{GPR} \\
& \mathrm{GPR} \leftarrow \text { temp }
\end{aligned}
$$

## Example

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { SWAP R0, IDH } & \text { // assume IDH }=00 \mathrm{~h} \text { and } R 0=08 \mathrm{~h} . \\
& / / \text { after this, } I D H=08 \mathrm{~h} \text { and } R 0=00 \mathrm{~h} .
\end{array}
$$

## PUSH REG

Saves REG in the stack (Pushes REG into stack). $R E G=G P R, S P R$

## Operation

$$
\mathrm{HS}[\text { sptr }][7: 0] \leftarrow \text { REG and sptr } \leftarrow \mathrm{sptr}+1
$$

## Example

PUSH R0 // assume R0 $=08 \mathrm{~h}$ and sptr $=2 \mathrm{~h}$ // then HS[2][7:0] $\leftarrow 08 \mathrm{~h}$ and sptr $\leftarrow 3 \mathrm{~h}$

## POP REG

Pops stack into REG.
REG = GPR, SPR

## Operation

REG $\leftarrow \mathrm{HS}[$ sptr-1][7:0] and sptr $\leftarrow \mathrm{sptr}-1$

## Example

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { POP R0 } & \text { // assume sptr }=3 \mathrm{~h} \text { and } \mathrm{HS}[2]=18407 \mathrm{~h} \\
& / / \mathrm{RO} \leftarrow 07 \mathrm{~h} \text { and sptr } \leftarrow 2 \mathrm{~h}
\end{array}
$$

## POP

Pops 2 bytes from the stack and discards the popped data.

## NOP

Does no work but increase PC by 1 .

## BREAK

Does nothing and does NOT increment PC. This instruction is for the debugger only. When this instruction is executed, the processor is locked since PC is not incremented. Therefore, this instruction should not be used under any mode other than the debug mode.

## SYS \#imm:8

Does nothing but increase PC by 1 and generates SYSCP[7:0] and nSYSID signals.

## CLD GPR, imm:8

GPR $\leftarrow$ (imm:8) and generates SYSCP[7:0], nCLDID, and nCLDWR signals.

## CLD imm:8, GPR

(imm:8) $\leftarrow$ GPR and generates SYSCP[7:0], nCLDID, and nCLDWR signals.

## COP \#imm:12

Generates SYSCP[11:0] and nCOPID signals.

## LDC

Loads program memory item into register.

## Operation

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
{[\mathrm{TBH}: \mathrm{TBL}]} & \leftarrow \mathrm{PM}[\text { ILX:ILH:ILL] } \\
{[\mathrm{TBH}: \mathrm{TBL}] \leftarrow \mathrm{PM}[\mathrm{ILX}: \mathrm{ILH}: \mathrm{ILL}], \mathrm{ILL++}} & \text { (LDC @IL) } \\
\text { @IL+) }
\end{array}
$$

TBH and TBL are temporary registers to hold the transferred program memory items. These can be accessed only by LD GPR and TBL/TBH instruction.

## Example

LD ILX, R1 // assume R1:R2:R3 has the program address to access
LD ILH, R2
LD ILL, R3
LDC @IL // get the program data @(ILX:ILH:ILL) into TBH:TBL

## PSEUDO INSTRUCTIONS

EI/DI
Exceptions enable and disable instruction.

## Operation

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { SRO } \leftarrow \text { OR SRO, \#00000010b } \\
& \text { SR0 } \leftarrow \text { (EI) } \\
& \text { AND SR0, \#11111101b }
\end{aligned}
$$

Exceptions are enabled or disabled through this instruction. If there is an El instruction, the SR0.1 is set and reset, when DI instruction.

## Example

DI
-
-
EI

## SCF/RCF

Carry flag set and reset instruction.
Operation

| CP R0,R0 | (SCF) |
| :--- | :--- |
| AND RO,R0 | (RCF) |

Carry flag is set or reset through this instruction. If there is an SCF instruction, the SR1.0 is set and reset, when RCF instruction.

## Example

SCF
RCF

## STOP/IDLE

MCU power saving instruction.

## Operation

$$
\begin{array}{ll}
\text { SYS \#0Ah } & \text { (STOP) } \\
\text { SYS \#05h } & \text { (IDLE) }
\end{array}
$$

The STOP instruction stops the both CPU clock and system clock and causes the microcontroller to enter STOP mode. The IDLE instruction stops the CPU clock while allowing system clock oscillation to continue.

## Example

STOP(or IDLE)
NOP
NOP
NOP
-
-

## ADC - Add with Carry

Format: $\quad$ ADC <op1>, <op2>
<op1>: GPR
<op2>: adr:8, GPR
Operation: $\quad$ <op1> $\leftarrow<$ op1> + <op2> + C
ADC adds the values of <op1> and <op2> and carry (C) and stores the result back into <op1>
Flags: $\quad$ C: set if carry is generated. Reset if not.
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
V: set if overflow is generated. Reset if not.
N : exclusive OR of V and MSB of result.

Example:

| ADC | R0, 80h | // If eid $=0, R 0 \leftarrow R 0+D M[0080 h]+C$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  | // If eid $=1, R 0 \leftarrow R 0+D M[I D H: 80 h]+C$ |
| ADC | $R 0, R 1$ | // R0 $4 \leftarrow R 0+R 1+C$ |
| ADD | $R 0, R 2$ |  |
| ADC | $R 1, R 3$ |  |

In the last two instructions, assuming that register pair R1:R0 and R3:R2 are 16-bit signed or unsigned numbers. Even if the result of "ADD R0, R2" is not zero, $Z$ flag can be set to ' 1 ' if the result of "ADC R1,R3" is zero. Note that zero (Z) flag do not exactly reflect result of 16-bit operation. Therefore when programming 16 -bit addition, take care of the change of $Z$ flag.

## ADD - Add

Format: ADD <op1>, <op2>
<op1>: GPR
<op2>: adr:8, \#imm:8, GPR, @idm
Operation: $\quad<o p 1>\leftarrow<o p 1>+<o p 2>$
ADD adds the values of <op1> and <op2> and stores the result back into <op1>.
Flags: $\quad$ C: set if carry is generated. Reset if not.
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
V: set if overflow is generated. Reset if not.
$\mathbf{N}$ : exclusive OR of V and MSB of result.

Example: $\quad$ Given: IDH:IDLO $=80$ FFh, eid $=1$

| ADD | R0, 80h | $/ / \mathrm{RO} \leftarrow \mathrm{R} 0+\mathrm{DM}$ [8080h] |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ADD | R0, \#12h | $/ / \mathrm{RO} \leftarrow \mathrm{R} 0+12 h$ |
| ADD | R1, R2 | $/ / \mathrm{R} 1 \leftarrow \mathrm{R} 1+\mathrm{R} 2$ |
| ADD | R0, @ID0 + 2 | // R0 $\leftarrow$ R0 + DM[80FFh], IDH $\leftarrow 81 \mathrm{~h}$, IDL0 $\leftarrow 01 \mathrm{~h}$ |
| ADD | R0, @[ID0 - 3] | // R0 $\leftarrow$ R0 + DM[80FCh], IDH $\leftarrow 80 h$, IDL0 $\leftarrow$ FCh |
| ADD | R0, @[ID0 + 2]! | $/ / \mathrm{RO} \leftarrow \mathrm{R} 0+\mathrm{DM}$ [8101h], IDH $\leftarrow 80 \mathrm{~h}$, IDLO $\leftarrow$ FFh |
| ADD | R0, @[ID0 - 2]! | $/ / \mathrm{RO} \leftarrow \mathrm{R} 0+\mathrm{DM}$ [80FDh], IDH $\leftarrow 80 \mathrm{~h}$, IDL0 $\leftarrow \mathrm{FFh}$ |

In the last two instructions, the value of IDH:IDL0 is not changed. Refer to Table 8-5 for more detailed explanation about this addressing mode.
idm = IDx+offset:5, [IDx-offset:5], [IDx+offset:5]!, [IDx-offset:5]! (IDx = ID0 or ID1)

## AND - Bit-wise AND

Format: AND <op1>, <op2>
<op1>: GPR
<op2>: adr:8, \#imm:8, GPR, @idm
Operation: $\quad<o p 1>\leftarrow<o p 1>\&<o p 2>$
AND performs bit-wise AND on the values in <op1> and <op2> and stores the result in <op1>.
Flags: $\quad Z:$ set if result is zero. Reset if not.
$\mathbf{N}$ : set if the MSB of result is 1 . Reset if not.
Example: $\quad$ Given: IDH:IDL0 $=01 F F h$, eid $=1$

| AND | R0, 7Ah | $/ / R 0 \leftarrow R 0 \& D M[017 A h]$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| AND | $R 1, \# 40 h$ | $/ / R 1 \leftarrow R 1 \& 40 h$ |
|  |  |  |
| AND | $R 0, R 1$ | $/ / R 0 \leftarrow R 0 \& R 1$ |
|  |  | $/ / R 1 \leftarrow R 1 \& D M[01 F F h]$, IDH:IDL0 $\leftarrow 0202 h$ |
| AND | $R 1, @ I D 0+3$ | $/ / R 1 \leftarrow R 1 \& D M[01 F A h]$, IDH:IDL0 $\leftarrow 01 F A h$ |
| AND | $R 1, @[I D 0-5]$ | $/ / R 1 \leftarrow R 1 \& D M[0206 h]$, IDH:IDL0 $\leftarrow 01 F F h$ |
| AND | $R 1, @[I D 0+7]!$ | $/ / R 1 \leftarrow R 1 \& D M[01 F D h]$, IDH:IDL0 $\leftarrow 01 F F h$ |

In the first instruction, if eid bit in SR0 is zero, register R0 has garbage value because data memory DM[0051h-007Fh] are not mapped in S3CB519/S3FB519. In the last two instructions, the value of IDH:IDL0 is not changed. Refer to Table 8-5 for more detailed explanation about this addressing mode.
idm = IDx+offset:5, [IDx-offset:5], [IDx+offset:5]!, [IDx-offset:5]! (IDx = ID0 or ID1)

## AND SRO - Bit-wise AND with SRo

Format: AND SR0, \#imm:8
Operation: $\quad$ SRO $\leftarrow$ SR0 \& imm:8
AND SR0 performs the bit-wise AND operation on the value of SR0 and imm:8 and stores the result in SRO.

## Flags:

Example: $\quad$ Given: $\mathrm{SRO}=11000010 \mathrm{~b}$

| nIE | EQU | $\sim 02 \mathrm{~h}$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| nIE0 | EQU | $\sim 40 \mathrm{~h}$ |
| nIE1 | EQU | $\sim 80 \mathrm{~h}$ |
|  | AND | SR0, \#nIE \| nIE0 $\mid$ nIE1 |
|  |  |  |
|  | AND | SR0, \#11111101b |

In the first example, the statement "AND SR0, \#nIE|nIEO|nIE1" clear all of bits of the global interrupt, interrupt 0 and interrupt 1 . On the contrary, cleared bits can be set to ' 1 ' by instruction "OR SR0, \#imm:8". Refer to instruction OR SR0 for more detailed explanation about enabling bit.

In the second example, the statement "AND SRO, \#11111101b" is equal to instruction DI, which is disabling interrupt globally.

## BANK - GPR Bank selection

Format: BANK \#imm:2
Operation: $\quad \operatorname{SR} 0[4: 3] \leftarrow$ imm:2
Flags:
NOTE: $\quad$ For explanation of the CalmRISC banked register file and its usage, please refer to chapter 3.

## Example:

| BANK | $\# 1$ | // Select register bank 1 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| LD | R0, \#11h | // Bank1's R0 $\leftarrow 11 \mathrm{~h}$ |
|  |  | // Select register bank 2 |
| BANK | \#2 | // Bank2's R1 $\leftarrow 22 \mathrm{~h}$ |

## BITC - Bit Complement

Format: BITC adr:8.bs
bs: 3-digit bit specifier
Operation: $\quad \mathrm{R} 3 \leftarrow\left((\operatorname{adr}: 8)^{\wedge}\left(2^{* *} \mathrm{bs}\right)\right) \quad$ if $(\mathrm{TF}==0)$
$($ adr: 8$) \leftarrow\left((\operatorname{adr}: 8)^{\wedge}\left(2^{* *} \mathrm{bs}\right)\right) \quad$ if $(\mathrm{TF}==1)$
BITC complements the specified bit of a value read from memory and stores the result in R3 or back into memory, depending on the value of TF. TF is set or clear by BMS/BMC instruction.

Flags: $\quad$ Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
NOTE: $\quad$ Since the destination register R3 is fixed, it is not specified explicitly.
Example: $\quad$ Given: $I D H=01, D M[0180 h]=F F h$, eid $=1$

| BMC |  | $/ / \mathrm{TF} \leftarrow 0$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| BITC | 80 h .0 |  |
|  |  | R3 $\leftarrow$ FEh, DM[0180h] $=\mathrm{FFh}$ |
| BMS |  | $/ / \mathrm{TF} \leftarrow 1$ |
| BITC | 80 h .1 | $/ / \mathrm{DM}[0180 \mathrm{~h}] \leftarrow \mathrm{FDh}$ |

SMMSUNF

## BITR — Bit Reset

Format: BITR adr:8.bs
bs: 3-digit bit specifier
Operation: $\quad \mathrm{R} 3 \leftarrow\left((\operatorname{adr}: 8) \&\left((11111111)_{2}-\left(2^{* *} \mathrm{bs}\right)\right)\right) \quad$ if $(\mathrm{TF}==0)$
$($ adr $: 8) \leftarrow\left((\operatorname{adr}: 8) \&\left((11111111)_{2}-\left(2^{* *} \mathrm{bs}\right)\right)\right) \quad$ if $(\mathrm{TF}==1)$
BITR resets the specified bit of a value read from memory and stores the result in R3 or back into memory, depending on the value of TF. TF is set or clear by BMS/BMC instruction.

Flags: $\quad Z:$ set if result is zero. Reset if not.
NOTE: $\quad$ Since the destination register R3 is fixed, it is not specified explicitly.
Example: $\quad$ Given: IDH $=01, \mathrm{DM}[0180 h]=F F h$, eid $=1$

| BMC |  | $/ / \mathrm{TF} \leftarrow 0$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| BITR | 80 h .1 | $/ / \mathrm{R} 3 \leftarrow \mathrm{FDh}, \mathrm{DM}[0180 \mathrm{~h}]=\mathrm{FFh}$ |
| BMS |  | $/ / \mathrm{TF} \leftarrow 1$ |
| BITR | 80 h .2 | $/ / \mathrm{DM}[0180 \mathrm{~h}] \leftarrow \mathrm{FBh}$ |

## BITS - Bit Set

Format: BITS adr:8.bs
bs: 3-digit bit specifier.
Operation: $\quad \mathrm{R} 3 \leftarrow\left((\operatorname{adr}: 8) \mid\left(2^{* *} \mathrm{bs}\right)\right) \quad$ if $(\mathrm{TF}==0)$
$($ adr: 8$) \leftarrow\left((\right.$ adr: $\left.: 8) \mid\left(2^{* * b s}\right)\right) \quad$ if $(T F==1)$
BITS sets the specified bit of a value read from memory and stores the result in R3 or back into memory, depending on the value of TF. TF is set or clear by BMS/BMC instruction.

Flags: $\quad$ Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
NOTE: $\quad$ Since the destination register R3 is fixed, it is not specified explicitly.
Example: $\quad$ Given: $I D H=01, D M[0180 h]=F 0 h$, eid $=1$

| BMC |  | $/ / \mathrm{TF} \leftarrow 0$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| BITS | 80 h .1 | $/ / \mathrm{R} 3 \leftarrow 0 \mathrm{~F} 2 \mathrm{~h}, \mathrm{DM}[0180 \mathrm{~h}]=$ F0h |
| BMS |  | $/ / \mathrm{TF} \leftarrow 1$ |
| BITS | 80 h .2 | $/ / \mathrm{DM}[0180 \mathrm{~h}] \leftarrow \mathrm{F} 4 \mathrm{~h}$ |

SMMSUNF

## BITT — Bit Test

Format: BITT adr:8.bs
bs: 3-digit bit specifier.
Operation: $\quad \mathrm{Z} \leftarrow \sim\left((\mathrm{adr}: 8) \&\left(2^{* *} \mathrm{bs}\right)\right)$
BITT tests the specified bit of a value read from memory.
Flags: $\quad$ Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
Example: $\quad$ Given: DM[0080h] $=$ F7h, eid $=0$

|  | BITT | 80h. 3 | // Z flag is set to ' 1 ' |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | JR | Z, \%1 | // Jump to label \%1 because condition is true. |
|  | - |  |  |
|  | - |  |  |
| \%1 | BITS | 80h. 3 |  |
|  | NOP |  |  |
|  | - |  |  |
|  | - |  |  |
|  | - |  |  |

## BMC/BMS - tr bit clear/set

Format: BMS/BMC
Operation: BMC/BMS clears (sets) the TF bit.
$\mathrm{TF} \leftarrow 0$ if BMC
$\mathrm{TF} \leftarrow 1$ if BMS
TF is a single bit flag which determines the destination of bit operations, such as BITC, BITR, and BITS.

Flags:
NOTE: $\quad$ BMC/BMS are the only instructions that modify the content of the TF bit.
Example:

| BMS |  | $/ / \mathrm{TF} \leftarrow 1$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| BITS | 81 h .1 |  |
| BMC |  | $/ \mathrm{TF} \leftarrow 0$ |
| BITR | 81h.2 |  |
| LD | R0, R3 |  |

SMMSUNF

## CALL - Conditional Subroutine Call (Pseudo Instruction)

Format: CALL cc:4, imm:20
CALL imm:12
Operation: If CALLS can access the target address and there is no conditional code (cc:4), CALL command is assembled to CALLS (1-word instruction) in linking time, else the CALL is assembled to LCALL (2-word instruction).

## Example:

|  | CALL | C, Wait | $/ /$ HS[sptr][15:0] $\leftarrow$ current PC +2 , sptr $\leftarrow$ sptr +2 <br> // 2-word instruction |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | - |  |  |
|  | CALL | 0088h | // HS[sptr][15:0] $\leftarrow$ current PC +1 , sptr $\leftarrow$ sptr +2 <br> // 1-word instruction |
|  | - |  |  |
| Wait: | NOP |  | // Address at 0088h |
|  | NOP |  |  |
|  | NOP |  |  |
|  | NOP |  |  |
|  | NOP |  |  |
|  | RET |  |  |

## CALLS - Call Subroutine

Format: CALLS imm:12
Operation: $\quad \mathrm{HS}[\mathrm{sptr}][15: 0] \leftarrow$ current $\mathrm{PC}+1$, sptr $\leftarrow \mathrm{sptr}+2$ if the program size is less than 64 K word. HS[sptr][19:0] $\leftarrow$ current PC +1 , sptr $\leftarrow$ sptr +2 if the program size is equal to or over 64 K word.
$\mathrm{PC}[11: 0] \leftarrow$ imm:12
CALLS unconditionally calls a subroutine residing at the address specified by imm:12.
Flags:
Example:
CALLS Wait
-
-
-
Wait: NOP
NOP
NOP RET

Because this is a 1-word instruction, the saved returning address on stack is ( $\mathrm{PC}+1$ ).

## CLD - Load into Coprocessor

Format: CLD imm:8, <op>
<op>: GPR
Operation: $\quad$ (imm:8) $\leftarrow$ <op>
CLD loads the value of <op> into (imm:8), where imm:8 is used to access the external coprocessor's address space.

Flags:
Example:

| AH | EQU | 00h |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| AL | EQU | 01h |  |
| BH | EQU | 02h |  |
| BL | EQU | 03h |  |
|  | - |  |  |
|  | - |  |  |
|  | $\stackrel{\bullet}{\text { CLD }}$ | AH, R0 | $/ / \mathrm{A}[15: 8] \leftarrow \mathrm{R} 0$ |
|  | CLD | AL, R1 | // $\mathrm{A}[7: 0] \leftarrow \mathrm{R} 1$ |
|  | CLD | BH, R2 | // $\mathrm{B}[15: 8] \leftarrow \mathrm{R} 2$ |
|  | CLD | BL, R3 | // $\mathrm{B}[7: 0] \leftarrow \mathrm{R} 3$ |

The registers $A[15: 0]$ and $B[15: 0]$ are Arithmetic Unit (AU) registers of MAC816.
Above instructions generate SYSCP[7:0], nCLDID and CLDWR signals to access MAC816.

## CLD-Load from Coprocessor

Format: $\quad$ CLD <op>, imm:8
<op>: GPR

Operation: $\quad<$ op $>\leftarrow$ (imm:8)
CLD loads a value from the coprocessor, whose address is specified by imm:8.

Flags: Z: set if the loaded value in <op1> is zero. Reset if not.
$\mathbf{N}$ : set if the MSB of the loaded value in <op1> is 1 . Reset if not.

## Example:

| AH | EQU | $00 h$ |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
| AL | EQU | 01 h |  |
| BH | EQU | $02 h$ |  |
| BL | EQU | $03 h$ |  |
|  | $\bullet$ |  | $/ / R 0 \leftarrow A[15: 8]$ |
|  | $\bullet$ |  | $/ / R 1 \leftarrow A[7: 0]$ |
|  | CLD | $R 0, A H$ | $/ / R 2 \leftarrow B[15: 8]$ |
|  | $C L D$ | $R 1, A L$ | $/ / R 3 \leftarrow B[7: 0]$ |

The registers $\mathrm{A}[15: 0$ ] and $\mathrm{B}[15: 0$ ] are Arithmetic Unit (AU) registers of MAC816.
Above instructions generate SYSCP[7:0], nCLDID and CLDWR signals to access MAC816.

## COM - 1's or Bit-wise Complement

Format: $\quad$| COM <op> |
| :--- |
|  |
|  |
| <op>: GPR |

Operation: <op> $\leftarrow \sim$ <op>
COM takes the bit-wise complement operation on <op> and stores the result in <op>.
Flags: $\quad \mathbf{Z}:$ set if result is zero. Reset if not.
$\mathbf{N}$ : set if the MSB of result is 1 . Reset if not.

Example: Given: R1 = 5Ah
COM R1 $/ / \mathrm{R} 1 \leftarrow \mathrm{~A} 5 \mathrm{~h}, \mathrm{~N}$ flag is set to ' 1 '

## COM2-2's Complement

Format: $\quad$ COM2 <op>
<op>: GPR
Operation: $\quad<o p>\leftarrow \sim$ <op> +1
COM2 computes the 2's complement of <op> and stores the result in <op>.
Flags: C: set if carry is generated. Reset if not.
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
V: set if overflow is generated. Reset if not.
$\mathbf{N}$ : set if result is negative.
Example: Given: $\mathrm{R} 0=00 \mathrm{~h}, \mathrm{R} 1=5 \mathrm{Ah}$

| COM2 | R0 | $/ / R 0 \leftarrow 00 h, Z$ and $C$ flags are set to ' 1 '. |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| COM2 | R1 | $/ / R 1 \leftarrow A 6 h, N$ flag is set to ' 1 '. |

SNMSUNF

## COMC - Bit-wise Complement with Carry

Format: $\quad$ COMC <op> <op>: GPR

Operation: $\quad$ <op> $\leftarrow \sim$ <op $>+$ C
COMC takes the bit-wise complement of <op>, adds carry and stores the result in <op>.
Flags: $\quad$ C: set if carry is generated. Reset if not.
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
V: set if overflow is generated. Reset if not.
$\mathbf{N}$ : set if result is negative. Reset if not.
Example: If register pair $\mathrm{R} 1: \mathrm{R} 0$ is a 16-bit number, then the 2's complement of $\mathrm{R} 1: \mathrm{R} 0$ can be obtained by COM2 and COMC as following.

| COM2 | R0 |
| :--- | :--- |
| COMC | R1 |

Note that Z flag do not exactly reflect result of 16-bit operation. For example, if 16-bit register pair R1: R0 has value of FF01h, then 2's complement of R1: R0 is made of 00FFh by COM2 and COMC. At this time, by instruction COMC, zero ( $Z$ ) flag is set to ' 1 ' as if the result of 2's complement for 16bit number is zero. Therefore when programming 16 -bit comparison, take care of the change of $Z$ flag.

## COP - Coprocessor

Format: COP \#imm:12
Operation: COP passes imm:12 to the coprocessor by generating SYSCP[11:0] and nCOPID signals.
Flags:
Example:

$$
\begin{array}{lll}
\text { COP } & \text { \#0D01h } & \text { // generate } 1 \text { word instruction code(FD01h) } \\
\text { COP } & \# 0234 \mathrm{~h} & \text { // generate } 1 \text { word instruction code(F234h) }
\end{array}
$$

The above two instructions are equal to statement "ELD A, \#1234h" for MAC816 operation. The microcode of MAC instruction "ELD A, \#1234h" is "FD01F234", 2-word instruction. In this, code 'F' indicates 'COP' instruction.

## CP - Compare

Format: $\quad$ CP <op1>, <op2>
<op1>: GPR
<op2>: adr:8, \#imm:8, GPR, @idm
Operation: <op1> + ~<op2> + 1
CP compares the values of <op1> and <op2> by subtracting <op2> from <op1>. Contents of <op1> and <op2> are not changed.

Flags: $\quad$ C: set if carry is generated. Reset if not.
Z: set if result is zero (i.e., <op1> and <op2> are same). Reset if not.
V: set if overflow is generated. Reset if not.
$\mathbf{N}$ : set if result is negative. Reset if not.
Example: $\quad$ Given: $R 0=73 h, R 1=A 5 h, I D H: I D L 0=0123 h, D M[0123 h]=A 5$, eid $=1$

| CP | R0, 80h | // C flag is set to ' 1 ' |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| CP | R0, \#73h | // Z and C flags are set to ' 1 ' |
| CP | R0, R1 | // V flag is set to ' 1 ' |
| CP | R1, @ID0 | // Z and C flags are set to ' 1 ' |
| CP | R1, @[ID0-5] |  |
| CP | R2, @[ID0 + 7]! |  |
| CP | R2, @[ID0 - 2]! |  |

In the last two instructions, the value of IDH:IDL0 is not changed. Refer to Table 8-5 for more detailed explanation about this addressing mode.
idm = IDx+offset:5, [IDx-offset:5], [IDx+offset:5]!, [IDx-offset:5]! (IDx = ID0 or ID1)

## CPC - Compare with Carry

Format: $\quad$ CPC <op1>, <op2>
<op1>: GPR
<op2>: adr:8, GPR
Operation: $\quad<o p 1>\leftarrow<o p 1>+\sim<o p 2>+C$
CPC compares <op1> and <op2> by subtracting <op2> from <op1>. Unlike CP, however, CPC adds ( $\mathrm{C}-1$ ) to the result. Contents of <op1> and <op2> are not changed.

Flags: C: set if carry is generated. Reset if not.
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
V: set if overflow is generated. Reset if not.
$\mathbf{N}$ : set if result is negative. Reset if not.
Example: If register pair R1:R0 and R3:R2 are 16-bit signed or unsigned numbers, then use CP and CPC to compare two 16-bit numbers as follows.

```
CP R0, R1
CPC R2, R3
```

Because CPC considers C when comparing <op1> and <op2>, CP and CPC can be used in pair to compare 16-bit operands. But note that zero (Z) flag do not exactly reflect result of 16 -bit operation. Therefore when programming 16-bit comparison, take care of the change of $Z$ flag.

## SAMSUNG

## DEC - Decrement

Format: $\quad$| DEC <op> |  |
| :--- | :--- |
|  | $<o p>:$ GPR |

Operation: $\quad$ <op> $\leftarrow$ <op> + 0FFh
DEC decrease the value in <op> by adding 0FFh to <op>.
Flags: $\quad$ C: set if carry is generated. Reset if not.
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
V: set if overflow is generated. Reset if not.
$\mathbf{N}$ : set if result is negative. Reset if not.
Example: Given: $\mathrm{R} 0=80 \mathrm{~h}, \mathrm{R} 1=00 \mathrm{~h}$

| DEC | $R 0$ | $/ / R 0 \leftarrow 7 F h, C, V$ and $N$ flags are set to ' 1 ' |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| DEC | $R 1$ | $/ / R 1 \leftarrow F F h, N$ flags is set to ' 1 ' |

## DECC - Decrement with Carry

Format: DECC <op>
<op>: GPR
Operation: $\quad<o p>\leftarrow<o p>+0 F F h+C$
DECC decrease the value in <op> when carry is not set. When there is a carry, there is no change in the value of <op>.

Flags: $\quad$ C: set if carry is generated. Reset if not.
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
V: set if overflow is generated. Reset if not.
$\mathbf{N}$ : set if result is negative. Reset if not.
Example: If register pair R1:R0 is 16 -bit signed or unsigned number, then use DEC and DECC to decrement 16-bit number as follows.

DEC R0
DECC R1
Note that zero (Z) flag do not exactly reflect result of 16-bit operation. Therefore when programming 16 -bit decrement, take care of the change of $Z$ flag.

## DI — Disable Interrupt (Pseudo Instruction)

Format: DI
Operation: Disables interrupt globally. It is same as "AND SR0, \#OFDh" .
DI instruction sets bit1 (ie: global interrupt enable) of SR0 register to "0"

## Flags:

Example: $\quad$ Given: $\mathrm{SR} 0=03 \mathrm{~h}$
DI

$$
/ / \mathrm{SRO} \leftarrow \mathrm{SRO} \& 11111101 \mathrm{~b}
$$

DI instruction clears SR0[1] to '0', disabling interrupt processing.

## El - Enable Interrupt (Pseudo Instruction)

Format: EI
Operation: Enables interrupt globally. It is same as "OR SR0, \#02h".
El instruction sets the bit1 (ie: global interrupt enable) of SR0 register to "1"

## Flags:

Example: $\quad$ Given: $\mathrm{SRO}=01 \mathrm{~h}$
El $\quad / / \mathrm{SRO} \leftarrow \mathrm{SRO} \mid 00000010 \mathrm{~b}$
The statement "El" sets the SR0[1] to '1', enabling all interrupts.

## IDLE — Idle Operation (Pseudo Instruction)

Format: IDLE
Operation: The IDLE instruction stops the CPU clock while allowing system clock oscillation to continue. Idle mode can be released by an interrupt or reset operation.
The IDLE instruction is a pseudo instruction. It is assembled as "SYS \#05H", and this generates the SYSCP[7-0] signals. Then these signals are decoded and the decoded signals execute the idle operation.

Flags:
NOTE: The next instruction of IDLE instruction is executed, so please use the NOP instruction after the IDLE instruction.

## Example:

IDLE
NOP
NOP
NOP
-
-
-
The IDLE instruction stops the CPU clock but not the system clock.

## INC - Increment

Format: INC <op>
<op>: GPR
Operation: $\quad<o p>\leftarrow<o p>+1$
INC increase the value in <op>.
Flags: $\quad$ C: set if carry is generated. Reset if not.
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
V: set if overflow is generated. Reset if not.
$\mathbf{N}$ : set if result is negative. Reset if not.
Example: $\quad$ Given: $\mathrm{R} 0=7 \mathrm{Fh}, \mathrm{R} 1=\mathrm{FFh}$

| INC | R0 | $/ / R 0 \leftarrow 80 h, V$ flag is set to ' 1 ' |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| INC | R1 | $/ / R 1 \leftarrow 00 h, Z$ and $C$ flags are set to ' 1 ' |

SMMSUNF

## INCC - Increment with Carry

Format: INCC <op>
<op>: GPR
Operation: $\quad<o p>\leftarrow<o p>+C$
INCC increase the value of <op> only if there is carry. When there is no carry, the value of <op> is not changed.

Flags: $\quad$ C: set if carry is generated. Reset if not.
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
V: set if overflow is generated. Reset if not.
N : exclusive OR of V and MSB of result.
Example: If register pair R1:R0 is 16-bit signed or unsigned number, then use INC and INCC to increment 16-bit number as following.

## INC R0 <br> INCC R1

Assume R1:R0 is 0010h, statement "INC R0" increase R0 by one without carry and statement "INCC R1" set zero ( $Z$ ) flag to ' 1 ' as if the result of 16 -bit increment is zero. Note that zero ( $Z$ ) flag do not exactly reflect result of 16-bit operation. Therefore when programming 16-bit increment, take care of the change of $Z$ flag.

## IRET - Return from Interrupt Handling

Format: IRET
Operation: $\quad \mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{HS}[$ sptr -2 ], sptr $\leftarrow$ sptr - 2
IRET pops the return address (after interrupt handling) from the hardware stack and assigns it to PC. The ie (i.e., SRO[1]) bit is set to allow further interrupt generation.

Flags:
NOTE: The program size (indicated by the nP64KW signal) determines which portion of PC is updated. When the program size is less than 64K word, only the lower 16 bits of PC are updated (i.e., PC[15:0] $\leftarrow \mathrm{HS}[$ sptr - 2]).

When the program size is 64 K word or more, the action taken is $\mathrm{PC}[19: 0] \leftarrow \mathrm{HS}[$ sptr -2 ].

## Example:

SF_EXCEP: NOP // Stack full exception service routine
-
-
-
IRET

## JNZD — Jump Not Zero with Delay slot

Format: JNZD <op>, imm:8
<op>: GPR (bank 3's GPR only)
imm:8 is an signed number
Operation: $\quad \mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}$ [delay slot] - 2's complement of imm:8
<op> $\leftarrow$ <op> - 1
JNZD performs a backward PC-relative jump if <op> evaluates to be non-zero. Furthermore, JNZD decrease the value of <op>. The instruction immediately following JNZD (i.e., in delay slot) is always executed, and this instruction must be 1 cycle instruction.

Flags:
NOTE: Typically, the delay slot will be filled with an instruction from the loop body. It is noted, however, that the chosen instruction should be "dead" outside the loop for it executes even when the loop is exited (i.e., JNZD is not taken).

Example: $\quad$ Given: $\operatorname{IDH}=03 \mathrm{~h}$, eid $=1$

BANK \#3
LD R0, \#0FFh // R0 is used to loop counter
LD R1, \#0
\%1 LD IDL0, R0
JNZD R0, \%B1 // If R0 of bank3 is not zero, jump to \%1.
LD @ID0, R1 // Clear register pointed by ID0
-
-
-
This example can be used for RAM clear routine. The last instruction is executed even if the loop is exited.

## JP - Conditional Jump (Pseudo Instruction)

Format: JP cc:4 imm:20 JP cc:4 imm:9

Operation: If JR can access the target address, JP command is assembled to JR (1 word instruction) in linking time, else the JP is assembled to LJP (2 word instruction) instruction. There are 16 different conditions that can be used, as described in table 8-6.

## Example:

| \%1 | LD | R0, \#10h | // Assume address of label \%1 is 020Dh |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | - |  |  |
|  | - |  |  |
|  | JP | Z, \%B1 | // Address at 0264h |
| \%2 | JP | C, \%F2 | // Address at 0265h |
|  | - |  |  |
|  | LD | R1, \#20h | // Assume address of label \%2 is 089Ch |
|  | - |  |  |
|  | - |  |  |

In the above example, the statement "JP Z, \%B1" is assembled to JR instruction. Assuming that current PC is 0264h and condition is true, next PC is made by PC[11:0] $\leftarrow \mathrm{PC}[11: 0]+$ offset, offset value is " $64 \mathrm{~h}+\mathrm{A} 9 \mathrm{~h}$ " without carry. 'A9' means 2 's complement of offset value to jump backward. Therefore next PC is 020Dh. On the other hand, statement "JP C, \%F2" is assembled to LJP instruction because offset address exceeds the range of imm:9.

## JR - Conditional Jump Relative

## Format: JR cc:4 imm:9

cc:4: 4-bit condition code
Operation: $\quad \mathrm{PC}[11: 0] \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}[11: 0]+$ imm:9 if condition is true. imm:9 is a signed number, which is signextended to 12 bits when added to PC.
There are 16 different conditions that can be used, as described in table 8-6.

## Flags:

NOTE: $\quad$ Unlike LJP, the target address of JR is PC-relative. In the case of JR, imm:9 is added to PC to compute the actual jump address, while LJP directly jumps to imm:20, the target.

## Example:

|  | JR | Z, \%1 | - |
| :--- | :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  | • |  |  |
| \%1 | LD |  |  |
|  | - R0, R1 |  |  |

After the first instruction is executed, next PC has become 10A5h if $Z$ flag bit is set to ' 1 '. The range of the relative address is from +255 to -256 because imm: 9 is signed number.

## LCALL - Conditional Subroutine Call

## Format: LCALL cc:4, imm:20

Operation: $\quad \mathrm{HS}[$ sptr][15:0] $\leftarrow$ current $\mathrm{PC}+2$, sptr $\leftarrow$ sptr +2 , PC[15:0] $\leftarrow$ imm[15:0] if the condition holds and the program size is less than 64 K word.

HS[sptr][19:0] $\leftarrow$ current PC +2 , sptr $\leftarrow$ sptr +2 , PC[19:0] $\leftarrow \mathrm{imm}: 20$ if the condition holds and the program size is equal to or over 64 K word.
$\mathrm{PC}[11: 0] \leftarrow \mathrm{PC}[11: 0]+2$ otherwise.
LCALL instruction is used to call a subroutine whose starting address is specified by imm:20.
Flags:
Example:
LCALL L1
LCALL C, L2
Label L1 and L2 can be allocated to the same or other section. Because this is a 2-word instruction, the saved returning address on stack is (PC + 2).

## LD adr:8 - Load into Memory

Format: LD adr:8, <op>
<op>: GPR
Operation: $\quad$ DM[00h:adr:8] $\leftarrow$ <op> if eid $=0$
DM[IDH:adr:8] $\leftarrow$ <op> if eid $=1$
LD adr:8 loads the value of <op> into a memory location. The memory location is determined by the eid bit and adr:8.

Flags:
Example: Given: IDH $=01 \mathrm{~h}$

LD 80h, R0

If eid bit of SR0 is zero, the statement "LD 80h, R0" load value of R0 into DM[0080h], else eid bit was set to ' 1 ', the statement "LD 80h, R0" load value of R0 into DM[0180h]

## LD @idm — Load into Memory Indexed

Format: LD @idm, <op>
<op>: GPR
Operation: $\quad($ @idm $) \leftarrow$ <op>
LD @idm loads the value of <op> into the memory location determined by @idm. Details of the @idm format and how the actual address is calculated can be found in chapter 2.

## Flags:

Example: $\quad$ Given $\mathrm{RO}=5 \mathrm{Ah}, \mathrm{IDH}: \mathrm{IDL0}=8023 \mathrm{~h}$, eid $=1$

| LD | @ID0, R0 | $/ /$ DM $[8023 h] \leftarrow 5 A h$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| LD | @ID0 + 3, R0 | $/ /$ DM $[8023 h] \leftarrow 5 A h$, IDL0 $\leftarrow 26 h$ |
| LD | @ [ID0-5], R0 | $/ /$ DM $[801 E h] \leftarrow 5 A h$, IDL0 $\leftarrow 1$ Eh |
| LD | @[ID0+4]!, R0 | $/ /$ DM $[8027 h] \leftarrow 5 A h$, IDL0 $\leftarrow 23 h$ |
| LD | @[ID0-2]!, R0 | $/ /$ DM $[8021 h] \leftarrow 5 A h$, IDL0 $\leftarrow 23 h$ |

In the last two instructions, the value of IDH:IDL0 is not changed. Refer to Table 8-5 for more detailed explanation about this addressing mode.
idm = IDx+offset:5, [IDx-offset:5], [IDx+offset:5]!, [IDx-offset:5]! (IDx = ID0 or ID1)

## LD - Load Register

Format: LD <op1>, <op2>
<op1>: GPR
<op2>: GPR, SPR, adr:8, @idm, \#imm:8
Operation: <op1> $\leftarrow$ <op2>
LD loads a value specified by <op2> into the register designated by <op1>.
Flags: $\quad$ Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
N : exclusive OR of V and MSB of result.
Example: $\quad$ Given: R0 $=5 \mathrm{Ah}, \mathrm{R} 1=\mathrm{AAh}, \mathrm{IDH}: I D L 0=8023 \mathrm{~h}$, eid $=1$

| LD | R0, R1 | $/ / \mathrm{R} 0 \leftarrow \mathrm{AAh}$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| LD | R1, IDH | $/ / \mathrm{R} 1 \leftarrow 80 \mathrm{~h}$ |
| LD | R2, 80h | $/ / \mathrm{R} 2 \leftarrow \mathrm{DM}[8080 \mathrm{~h}]$ |
|  |  |  |
| LD | R0, \#11h | $/ / \mathrm{R} 0 \leftarrow 11 \mathrm{~h}$ |
|  |  |  |
| LD | R0, @ID0+1 | $/ / R 0 \leftarrow$ DM[8023h], IDL0 $\leftarrow 24 \mathrm{~h}$ |
| LD | R1, @[ID0-2] | $/ / R 1 \leftarrow$ DM[8021h], IDL0 $\leftarrow 21 \mathrm{~h}$ |
| LD | R2, @[ID0+3]! | $/ / R 3 \leftarrow$ DM[8026h], IDL0 $\leftarrow 23 \mathrm{~h}$ |
| LD | R3, @[ID0-5]! |  |

In the last two instructions, the value of IDH:IDL0 is not changed. Refer to Table 8-5 for more detailed explanation about this addressing mode.
idm = IDx+offset:5, [IDx-offset:5], [IDx+offset:5]!, [IDx-offset:5]! (IDx = ID0 or ID1)

## LD — Load GPR:bankd, GPR:banks

Format: LD <op1>, <op2>
<op1>: GPR: bankd
<op2>: GPR: banks
Operation: $\quad<$ op1> $\leftarrow<$ op2>
LD loads a value of a register in a specified bank (banks) into another register in a specified bank (bankd).

Flags: $\quad$ Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not. $\mathbf{N}$ : exclusive OR of V and MSB of result.

## Example:

| LD | R2:1, R0:3 | // Bank1's R2 $\leftarrow$ bank3's R0 |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| LD | R0:0, R0:2 | // Bank0's R0 $\leftarrow$ bank2's R0 |

## LD — Load GPR, TBH/TBL

Format: LD <op1>, <op2>
<op1>: GPR
<op2>: TBH/TBL
Operation: <op1> $\leftarrow$ <op2>
LD loads a value specified by <op2> into the register designated by <op1>.
Flags: $\quad$ Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
$\mathbf{N}$ : exclusive OR of V and MSB of result.

Example: Given: register pair R1:R0 is 16-bit unsigned data.

| LDC | @IL | $/ / \mathrm{TBH}: \mathrm{TBL} \leftarrow \mathrm{PM}[I L X: I L H: I L L]$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| LD | R1, TBH | $/ / \mathrm{R} 1 \leftarrow \mathrm{TBH}$ |
| LD | R0, TBL | $/ / \mathrm{RO} \leftarrow \mathrm{TBL}$ |

## LD — Load TBH/TBL, GPR

Format: LD <op1>, <op2>
<op1>: TBH/TBL
<op2>: GPR
Operation: $\quad<$ op1> $\leftarrow<$ op2>
LD loads a value specified by <op2> into the register designated by <op1>.

## Flags:

Example: Given: register pair R1:R0 is 16-bit unsigned data.
LD
TBH, R1
$/ / \mathrm{TBH} \leftarrow \mathrm{R} 1$
LD TBL, RO
$/ / \mathrm{TBL} \leftarrow \mathrm{R} 0$

SMMSUNF

## LD SPR - Load SPR

Format: LD <op1>, <op2>
<op1>: SPR
<op2>: GPR
Operation: $\quad$ <op1> $\leftarrow$ <op2>
LD SPR loads the value of a GPR into an SPR.
Refer to Table 3-1 for more detailed explanation about kind of SPR.
Flags:
Example: Given: register pair $\mathrm{R} 1: \mathrm{RO}=1020 \mathrm{~h}$
LD
ILH, R1
$/ / \mathrm{ILH} \leftarrow 10 \mathrm{~h}$
LD ILL, RO
$/ /$ ILL $\leftarrow 20 \mathrm{~h}$

## LD SPRO - Load SPRo Immediate

Format: LD SPR0, \#imm:8
Operation: $\quad$ SPRO $\leftarrow$ imm:8
LD SPRO loads an 8-bit immediate value into SPR0.
Flags:
Example: Given: eid $=1, \mathrm{idb}=0$ (index register bank 0 selection)

| LD | IDH, \#80h | // IDH point to page 80h |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| LD | IDL1, \#44h |  |
| LD | IDL0, \#55h |  |
| LD | SR0, \#02h |  |

The last instruction set ie (global interrupt enable) bit to ' 1 '.
Special register group 1 (SPR1) registers are not supported in this addressing mode.

## LDC - Load Code

Format: $\quad$ LDC <op1>
<op1>: @IL, @IL+
Operation: $\quad \mathrm{TBH}: \mathrm{TBL} \leftarrow \mathrm{PM}[I \mathrm{XX}: \mathrm{ILH}: I \mathrm{ILL}]$
$\mathrm{ILL} \leftarrow \mathrm{ILL}+1$ (@IL+ only)
LDC loads a data item from program memory and stores it in the TBH:TBL register pair.
@IL+ increase the value of ILL, efficiently implementing table lookup operations.

## Flags:

Example:

| LD | ILX, R1 |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| LD | ILH, R2 |  |
| LD | ILL, R3 |  |
| LDC | @IL | // Loads value of PM[ILX:ILH:ILL] into TBH:TBL |
|  |  |  |
| LD | R1, TBH |  |
| LD | R0, TBL |  |

The statement "LDC @IL" do not increase, but if you use statement "LDC @IL+", ILL register is increased by one after instruction execution.

## LJP - Conditional Jump

Format: LJP cc:4, imm:20
cc:4: 4-bit condition code
Operation: $\quad \mathrm{PC}[15: 0] \leftarrow \mathrm{imm}[15: 0]$ if condition is true and the program size is less than 64 K word. If the program is equal to or larger than 64 K word, $\mathrm{PC}[19: 0] \leftarrow$ imm[19:0] as long as the condition is true. There are 16 different conditions that can be used, as described in table 8-6.

## Flags:

NOTE: LJP cc:4 imm:20 is a 2-word instruction whose immediate field directly specifies the target address of the jump.

## Example:

```
        LJP C, %1 // Assume current PC = 0812h
        \bullet
        \bullet
        LD R0, R1 // Address at 10A5h
        \bullet
        \bullet
        \bullet
```

After the first instruction is executed, LJP directly jumps to address 10A5h if condition is true.

## LLNK — Linked Subroutine Call Conditional

Format: LLNK cc:4, imm:20
cc:4: 4-bit condition code
Operation: If condition is true, $\mathrm{IL}[19: 0] \leftarrow\{\mathrm{PC}[19: 12], \mathrm{PC}[11: 0]+2\}$.
Further, when the program is equal to or larger than 64 K word, $\mathrm{PC}[19: 0] \leftarrow \operatorname{imm}[19: 0]$ as long as the condition is true. If the program is smaller than 64K word, $\mathrm{PC}[15: 0] \leftarrow \mathrm{imm}[15: 0]$.
There are 16 different conditions that can be used, as described in table 8-6.
Flags:

NOTE: $\quad$ LLNK is used to conditionally to call a subroutine with the return address saved in the link register (IL) without stack operation. This is a 2-word instruction.

## Example:



## LNK — Linked Subroutine Call (Pseudo Instruction)

Format: LNK cc:4, imm:20
LNK imm:12
Operation: If LNKS can access the target address and there is no conditional code (cc:4), LNK command is assembled to LNKS (1 word instruction) in linking time, else the LNK is assembled to LLNK (2 word instruction).

Example:

```
\begin{tabular}{lll} 
LNK & Z, Link1 & // Equal to "LLNK Z, Link1" \\
LNK & Link2 & // Equal to "LNKS Link2"
\end{tabular} NOP
-
-
-
-
-
-
LRET
```

Link2: NOP

Subroutines section CODE, ABS 0A00h
Subroutines
Link1: NOP
-
-
-
LRET

## LNKS — Linked Subroutine Call

Format: LNKS imm:12
Operation: $\quad \mathrm{IL}[19: 0] \leftarrow\{\mathrm{PC}[19: 12], \mathrm{PC}[11: 0]+1\}$ and $\mathrm{PC}[11: 0] \leftarrow$ imm:12 LNKS saves the current PC in the link register and jumps to the address specified by imm:12.

## Flags:

NOTE: LNKS is used to call a subroutine with the return address saved in the link register (IL) without stack operation.

## Example:

```
LNKS Link1 // Address at 005Ch, ILX:ILH:ILL }\leftarrow00:00:5D
    NOP // Address at 005Dh
```

Link1: NOP
-
-
LRET

## LRET — Return from Linked Subroutine Call

Format: LRET
Operation: $\quad \mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{IL}[19: 0]$
LRET returns from a subroutine by assigning the saved return address in IL to PC.

## Flags:

Example:
LNK Link1
NOP

Link1: NOP
-
-
LRET $\quad ; \quad \mathrm{PC}[19: 0] \leftarrow \mathrm{ILX}: I \mathrm{IL}: \mathrm{ILL}$

BヘMSUNF

## NOP - No Operation

| Format: | NOP |
| :--- | :--- |
| Operation: | No operation. |

When the instruction NOP is executed in a program, no operation occurs. Instead, the instruction time is delayed by approximately one machine cycle per each NOP instruction encountered.

## Flags:

## Example:

NOP

## OR - Bit-wise OR

Format: $\quad$ OR <op1>, <op2>
<op1>: GPR
<op2>: adr:8, \#imm:8, GPR, @idm
Operation: $\quad$ <op1> $\leftarrow$ <op1> |<op2>
OR performs the bit-wise OR operation on <op1> and <op2> and stores the result in <op1>.
Flags: $\quad$ Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
$\mathbf{N}$ : exclusive OR of V and MSB of result.
Example: Given: IDH:IDL0 $=031$ Eh, eid $=1$

| OR | R0, 80h | // R0 $\leftarrow$ R0 \| DM[0380h] |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| OR | R1, \#40h | // Mask bit6 of R1 |
| OR | R1, R0 | $/ / \mathrm{R} 1 \leftarrow \mathrm{R} 1 \mid \mathrm{R} 0$ |
| OR | R0, @ID0 | // R0 $\leftarrow$ R0 \| DM[031Eh], IDL0 $\leftarrow$ 1Eh |
| OR | R1, @[ID0-1] | // R1 $\leftarrow$ R1 \| DM[031Dh], IDL0 $\leftarrow$ 1Dh |
| OR | R2, @[ID0+1]! | // R2 $\leftarrow$ R2 \| DM[031Fh], IDL0 $\leftarrow$ 1Eh |
| OR | R3, @[ID0-1]! | // R3 $\leftarrow$ R3 \| DM[031Dh], IDL0 $\leftarrow$ 1Eh |

In the last two instructions, the value of IDH:IDL0 is not changed. Refer to Table 8-5 for more detailed explanation about this addressing mode.
idm = IDx+offset:5, [IDx-offset:5], [IDx+offset:5]!, [IDx-offset:5]! (IDx = ID0 or ID1)

## OR SRO - Bit-wise OR with SRO

Format: OR SR0, \#imm:8
Operation: $\quad$ SRO $\leftarrow$ SR0 | imm:8
OR SR0 performs the bit-wise OR operation on SR0 and imm:8 and stores the result in SR0.
Flags:
Example: $\quad$ Given: $\mathrm{SR} 0=00000000 \mathrm{~b}$

| EID | EQU | 01 h |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| IE | EQU | 02 h |
| IDB1 | EQU | 04 h |
| IE0 | EQU | 40 h |
| IE1 | EQU | 80 h |
|  | OR | SR0, \#IE \| IE0 | IE1 |
|  | OR | SR0, \#00000010b |

In the first example, the statement "OR SRO, \#EID|IE|IEO" set global interrupt(ie), interrupt 0(ie0) and interrupt 1(ie1) to '1' in SR0. On the contrary, enabled bits can be cleared with instruction "AND SR0, \#imm:8". Refer to instruction AND SR0 for more detailed explanation about disabling bit.

In the second example, the statement "OR SRO, \#00000010b" is equal to instruction El, which is enabling interrupt globally.

## POP _ POP

Format: POP
Operation: $\quad$ sptr $\leftarrow \mathrm{sptr}-2$
POP decrease sptr by 2 . The top two bytes of the hardware stack are therefore invalidated.
Flags:
Example: $\quad$ Given: $\operatorname{sptr[5:0]=001010b~}$
POP
This POP instruction decrease sptr[5:0] by 2 . Therefore sptr[5:0] is 001000 b .

## POP — POP to Register

Format: $\quad$ POP <op>
<op>: GPR, SPR
Operation: $\quad<o p>\leftarrow$ HS[sptr -1 ], sptr $\leftarrow$ sptr - 1
POP copies the value on top of the stack to <op> and decrease sptr by 1.
Flags: $\quad Z:$ set if the value copied to <op> is zero. Reset if not.
$\mathbf{N}$ : set if the value copied to <op> is negative. Reset if not. When <op> is SPR, no flags are affected, including $Z$ and $N$.

Example:

$$
\begin{array}{lll}
\text { POP } & \text { R0 } & / / \mathrm{RO} \leftarrow \mathrm{HS}[\text { sptr-1], sptr } \leftarrow \text { sptr- } 1 \\
\text { POP } & \mathrm{IDH} & / / \mathrm{IDH} \leftarrow \mathrm{HS}[\text { sptr-1], sptr } \leftarrow \text { sptr- } 1
\end{array}
$$

In the first instruction, value of HS[sptr-1] is loaded to R0 and the second instruction "POP IDH" load value of HS[sptr-1] to register IDH. Refer to chapter 5 for more detailed explanation about POP operations for hardware stack.

## PUSH — Push Register

Format: PUSH <op>
<op>: GPR, SPR
Operation: $\quad \mathrm{HS}[$ sptr $] \leftarrow$ <op>, sptr $\leftarrow$ sptr +1
PUSH stores the value of <op> on top of the stack and increase sptr by 1.

## Flags:

Example:

| PUSH | R0 | $/ / \mathrm{HS}[$ sptr $] \leftarrow \mathrm{RO}$, sptr $\leftarrow \mathrm{sptr}+1$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| PUSH | IDH | $/ / \mathrm{HS}[$ sptr $] \leftarrow \mathrm{IDH}$, sptr $\leftarrow \mathrm{sptr}+1$ |

In the first instruction, value of register R0 is loaded to HS[sptr-1] and the second instruction "PUSH IDH" load value of register IDH to HS[sptr-1]. Current HS pointed by stack point sptr[5:0] be emptied. Refer to chapter 5 for more detailed explanation about PUSH operations for hardware stack.

## RET - Return from Subroutine

Format: RET
Operation: $\quad \mathrm{PC} \leftarrow \mathrm{HS}[$ sptr -2$]$, sptr $\leftarrow \mathrm{sptr}-2$
RET pops an address on the hardware stack into PC so that control returns to the subroutine call site.

Flags:
Example: $\quad$ Given: $\operatorname{sptr[5:0]~=~001010b~}$
CALLS Wait // Address at 00120h
-
-

Wait: NOP
// Address at 01000h
NOP
NOP
NOP
NOP
RET
After the first instruction CALLS execution, "PC+1", 0121h is loaded to HS[5] and hardware stack pointer sptr[5:0] have 001100b and next PC became 01000h. The instruction RET pops value 0121h on the hardware stack HS[sptr-2] and load to PC then stack pointer sptr[[5:0] became 001010b.

## RL — Rotate Left

Format: $\quad$ RL <op>
<op>: GPR

Operation: $\quad C \leftarrow<o p>[7],<o p>\leftarrow\{<o p>[6: 0],<o p>[7]\}$
$R L$ rotates the value of <op> to the left and stores the result back into <op>. The original MSB of <op> is copied into carry (C).

Flags: $\quad$ C: set if the MSB of <op> (before rotating) is 1 . Reset if not.
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
$\mathbf{N}$ : set if the MSB of <op> (after rotating) is 1 . Reset if not.

Example: Given: $\mathrm{R} 0=01001010 \mathrm{~b}, \mathrm{R} 1=10100101 \mathrm{~b}$

| RL | R0 | // N flag is set to ' 1 ', R0 $\leftarrow$ 10010100b |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| RL | R1 | // C flag is set to ' 1 ', R1 $\leftarrow 01001011$ b |

## RLC - Rotate Left with Carry

Format: $\quad$ RLC <op>
<op>: GPR
Operation: $\quad \mathrm{C} \leftarrow<$ op>[7], <op> $\leftarrow\{<o p>[6: 0], \mathrm{C}\}$
RLC rotates the value of <op> to the left and stores the result back into <op>.
The original MSB of <op> is copied into carry (C), and the original C bit is copied into <op>[0].
Flags: $\quad$ C: set if the MSB of <op> (before rotating) is 1 . Reset if not.
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
$\mathbf{N}$ : set if the MSB of <op> (after rotating) is 1 . Reset if not.

Example: $\quad$ Given: $\mathrm{R} 2=\mathrm{A} 5 \mathrm{~h}$, if $\mathrm{C}=0$
RLC R2 $\quad / \mathrm{R} 2 \leftarrow 4 \mathrm{Ah}, \mathrm{C}$ flag is set to ' 1 '
RL R0
RLC R1
In the second example, assuming that register pair R1:R0 is 16-bit number, then RL and RLC are used for 16-bit rotate left operation. But note that zero (Z) flag do not exactly reflect result of 16-bit operation. Therefore when programming 16 -bit decrement, take care of the change of $Z$ flag.

## RR — Rotate Right

Format: $\quad R R$ <op> <op>: GPR

Operation: $\quad \mathrm{C} \leftarrow<$ op $>[0],<o p>\leftarrow\{<o p>[0],<o p>[7: 1]\}$
$R R$ rotates the value of <op> to the right and stores the result back into <op>. The original LSB of <op> is copied into carry (C).

Flags: $\quad$ C: set if the LSB of <op> (before rotating) is 1 . Reset if not.
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
N: set if the MSB of <op> (after rotating) is 1 . Reset if not.
Example: $\quad$ Given: $\mathrm{R} 0=01011010 \mathrm{~b}, \mathrm{R} 1=10100101 \mathrm{~b}$

| RR | R0 | // No change of flag, R0 $\leftarrow 00101101 \mathrm{~b}$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| RR | R1 | $/ / C$ and $N$ flags are set to ' 1 ', R1 $\leftarrow 11010010$ b |

## RRC — Rotate Right with Carry

Format: $\quad$ RRC <op>
<op>: GPR
Operation: $\quad C \leftarrow<o p>[0],<o p>\leftarrow\{C,<o p>[7: 1]\}$
RRC rotates the value of <op> to the right and stores the result back into <op>. The original LSB of <op> is copied into carry ( C ), and C is copied to the MSB.

Flags: $\quad$ C: set if the LSB of <op> (before rotating) is 1 . Reset if not.
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
$\mathbf{N}$ : set if the MSB of <op> (after rotating) is 1 . Reset if not.

Example: $\quad$ Given: $\mathrm{R} 2=\mathrm{A} 5 \mathrm{~h}$, if $\mathrm{C}=0$
$R R C \quad$ R2 $/ / R 2 \leftarrow 52 h$, C flag is set to ' 1 '
RR R0
RRC R1
In the second example, assuming that register pair R1:R0 is 16-bit number, then RR and RRC are used for 16 -bit rotate right operation. But note that zero ( $Z$ ) flag do not exactly reflect result of 16-bit operation. Therefore when programming 16 -bit decrement, take care of the change of $Z$ flag.

## SBC - Subtract with Carry

Format: $\quad$ SBC <op1>, <op2>
<op1>: GPR
<op2>: adr:8, GPR
Operation: $\quad<$ op1 $>\leftarrow<$ op1> $+\sim<o p 2>+C$
SBC computes (<op1>-<op2>) when there is carry and (<op1>-<op2>-1) when there is no carry.

Flags: $\quad$ C: set if carry is generated. Reset if not.
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
V: set if overflow is generated.
$\mathbf{N}$ : set if result is negative. Reset if not.
Example:

| SBC | R0, 80h | // If eid $=0, R 0 \leftarrow R 0+\sim D M[0080 h]+C$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
|  |  | // If eid $=1, R 0 \leftarrow R 0+\sim D M[I D H: 80 h]+C$ |
| SBC | $R 0, R 1$ | $/ / R 0 \leftarrow R 0+\sim R 1+C$ |
| SUB | $R 0, R 2$ |  |
| SBC | $R 1, R 3$ |  |

In the last two instructions, assuming that register pair R1:R0 and R3:R2 are 16-bit signed or unsigned numbers. Even if the result of "ADD R0, R2" is not zero, zero ( $Z$ ) flag can be set to ' 1 ' if the result of "SBC R1,R3" is zero. Note that zero (Z) flag do not exactly reflect result of 16-bit operation. Therefore when programming 16 -bit addition, take care of the change of $Z$ flag.

## SL — Shift Left

Format: $\quad \mathrm{SL}$ <op>
<op>: GPR
Operation: $\quad C \leftarrow<o p>[7],\langle o p\rangle \leftarrow\{\langle o p\rangle[6: 0], 0\}$
SL shifts <op> to the left by 1 bit. The MSB of the original <op> is copied into carry (C).
Flags: $\quad$ C: set if the MSB of <op> (before shifting) is 1 . Reset if not.
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
$\mathbf{N}$ : set if the MSB of <op> (after shifting) is 1 . Reset if not.
Example: $\quad$ Given: $\mathrm{R} 0=01001010 \mathrm{~b}, \mathrm{R} 1=10100101 \mathrm{~b}$
SL
// N flag is set to ' 1 ', R0 $\leftarrow 10010100 \mathrm{~b}$
SL R1
// C flag is set to ' 1 ', $\mathrm{R} 1 \leftarrow 01001010 \mathrm{~b}$

## SLA — Shift Left Arithmetic

Format: $\quad$ SLA <op>
<op>: GPR
Operation: $\quad \mathrm{C} \leftarrow<o p\rangle[7],\langle o p\rangle \leftarrow\{<o p\rangle[6: 0], 0\}$
SLA shifts <op> to the left by 1 bit. The MSB of the original <op> is copied into carry (C).
Flags: $\quad$ C: set if the MSB of <op> (before shifting) is 1 . Reset if not.
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
V: set if the MSB of the result is different from C. Reset if not.
$\mathbf{N}$ : set if the MSB of <op> (after shifting) is 1 . Reset if not.

Example: $\quad$ Given: $\mathrm{RO}=\mathrm{AAh}$
SLA R0 // C, V, N flags are set to ' 1 ', R0 $\leftarrow 54$ h

SMMSUNF

## SR — Shift Right

Format: $\quad \mathrm{SR}$ <op>
<op>: GPR
Operation: $\quad \mathrm{C} \leftarrow<o p\rangle[0],\langle o p\rangle \leftarrow\{0,<o p\rangle[7: 1]\}$
SR shifts <op> to the right by 1 bit. The LSB of the original <op> (i.e., <op>[0]) is copied into carry (C).

Flags: $\quad$ C: set if the LSB of <op> (before shifting) is 1 . Reset if not.
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
$\mathbf{N}$ : set if the MSB of <op> (after shifting) is 1 . Reset if not.

Example: $\quad$ Given: $\mathrm{R} 0=01011010 \mathrm{~b}, \mathrm{R} 1=10100101 \mathrm{~b}$

| SR | R0 | // No change of flags, R0 $\leftarrow 00101101 \mathrm{~b}$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| SR | R1 | // C flag is set to '1', R1 $\leftarrow 01010010$ b |

## SRA - Shift Right Arithmetic

Format: SRA <op>
<op>: GPR
Operation: $\quad \mathrm{C} \leftarrow<o p>[0],\langle o p\rangle \leftarrow\{<o p>[7],<o p>[7: 1]\}$
SRA shifts <op> to the right by 1 bit while keeping the sign of <op>. The LSB of the original <op> (i.e., <op>[0]) is copied into carry (C).

Flags: $\quad$ C: set if the LSB of <op> (before shifting) is 1 . Reset if not.
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
$\mathbf{N}$ : set if the MSB of <op> (after shifting) is 1 . Reset if not.
NOTE: $\quad$ SRA keeps the sign bit or the MSB (<op>[7]) in its original position. If SRA is executed ' N ' times, N significant bits will be set, followed by the shifted bits.

Example: Given: RO = 10100101b

| SRA | R0 | // C, N flags are set to ' 1 ', R0 $\leftarrow 11010010 \mathrm{~b}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| SRA | R0 | // N flag is set to ' 1 ', R0 $\leftarrow 11101001 \mathrm{~b}$ |
| SRA | R0 | // C, N flags are set to ' 1 ', R0 $\leftarrow 11110100 \mathrm{~b}$ |
| SRA | R0 | // N flags are set to ' 1 ', R0 $\leftarrow 11111010 \mathrm{~b}$ |

## STOP - Stop Operation (pseudo instruction)

Format: STOP
Operation: The STOP instruction stops the both the CPU clock and system clock and causes the microcontroller to enter the STOP mode. In the STOP mode, the contents of the on-chip CPU registers, peripheral registers, and I/O port control and data register are retained. A reset operation or external or internal interrupts can release stop mode. The STOP instruction is a pseudo instruction. It is assembled as "SYS \#0Ah", which generates the SYSCP[7-0] signals. These signals are decoded and stop the operation.

NOTE: The next instruction of STOP instruction is executed, so please use the NOP instruction after the STOP instruction.

## Example:

STOP
NOP
NOP
NOP
-
-

In this example, the NOP instructions provide the necessary timing delay for oscillation stabilization before the next instruction in the program sequence is executed. Refer to the timing diagrams of oscillation stabilization, as described in Figure 18-3, 18-4

## SUB - Subtract

Format: $\quad$ SUB <op1>, <op2>
<op1>: GPR
<op2>: adr:8, \#imm:8, GPR, @idm
Operation: $\quad<o p 1>\leftarrow<o p 1>+\sim<o p 2>+1$
SUB adds the value of <op1> with the 2's complement of <op2> to perform subtraction on <op1> and <op2>

Flags: $\quad$ C: set if carry is generated. Reset if not.
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
V: set if overflow is generated. Reset if not.
$\mathbf{N}$ : set if result is negative. Reset if not.
Example: $\quad$ Given: IDH:IDLO $=0150 \mathrm{~h}, \mathrm{DM}[0143 \mathrm{~h}]=26 \mathrm{~h}, \mathrm{R} 0=52 \mathrm{~h}, \mathrm{R} 1=14 \mathrm{~h}$, eid $=1$

| SUB | $R 0,43 h$ | $/ / R 0 \leftarrow R 0+\sim D M[0143 h]+1=2 C h$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| SUB | $R 1, \# 16 h$ | $/ / R 1 \leftarrow F E h, N$ flag is set to ' 1 ' |
| SUB | $R 0, R 1$ | $/ / R 0 \leftarrow R 0+\sim R 1+1=3 E h$ |
|  |  | $/ / R 0 \leftarrow R 0+\sim D M[0150 h]+1$, IDL0 $\leftarrow 51 \mathrm{~h}$ |
| SUB | $R 0, @ I D 0+1$ | $/ / R 0 \leftarrow R 0+\sim D M[014 E h]+1$, IDL0 $\leftarrow 4 E h$ |
| SUB | $R 0, @[I D 0-2]$ | $/ / R 0 \leftarrow R 0+\sim D M[0153 h]+1$, IDL0 $\leftarrow 50 h$ |
| SUB | $R 0, @[I D 0+3]!$ | $/ / R 0 \leftarrow R 0+\sim D M[014 E h]+1$, IDL0 $\leftarrow 50 h$ |

In the last two instructions, the value of IDH:IDL0 is not changed. Refer to Table 8-5 for more detailed explanation about this addressing mode. The example in the SBC description shows how SUB and SBC can be used in pair to subtract a 16-bit number from another.
idm = IDx+offset:5, [IDx-offset:5], [IDx+offset:5]!, [IDx-offset:5]! (IDx = ID0 or ID1)

## SWAP - Swap

Format: SWAP <op1>, <op2>
<op1>: GPR <op2>: SPR

Operation: <op1> $\leftarrow$ <op2>, <op2> $\leftarrow<o p 1>$ SWAP swaps the values of the two operands.

Flags:

NOTE: Among the SPRs, SR0 and SR1 can not be used as <op2>.

Example: $\quad$ Given: IDH:IDL0 $=8023 \mathrm{~h}, \mathrm{R} 0=56 \mathrm{~h}, \mathrm{R} 1=01 \mathrm{~h}$

| SWAP | R1, IDH | $/ /$ R1 $\leftarrow 80 \mathrm{~h}$, IDH $\leftarrow 01 \mathrm{~h}$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| SWAP | R0, IDL0 | $/ /$ R0 $\leftarrow 23 \mathrm{~h}$, IDL0 $\leftarrow 56 \mathrm{~h}$ |

After execution of instructions, index registers IDH:IDLO (ID0) have address 0156h.

## SYS - System

Format: SYS \#imm:8
Operation: SYS generates SYSCP[7:0] and nSYSID signals.
Flags:
NOTE: $\quad$ Mainly used for system peripheral interfacing.
Example:
SYS \#OAh
SYS \#05h
In the first example, statement "SYS \#OAh" is equal to STOP instruction and second example "SYS \#05h" is equal to IDLE instruction. This instruction does nothing but increase PC by one and generates SYSCP[7:0] and nSYSID signals.

## TM — Test Multiple Bits

Format: $\quad$ TM <op>, \#imm:8
<op>: GPR
Operation: TM performs the bit-wise AND operation on <op> and imm:8 and sets the flags. The content of <op> is not changed.

Flags: $\quad Z:$ set if result is zero. Reset if not.
$\mathbf{N}$ : set if result is negative. Reset if not.
Example: Given: $\mathrm{RO}=01001101 \mathrm{~b}$
TM R0, \#00100010b // Z flag is set to ' 1 '

## XOR — Exclusive OR

Format: XOR <op1>, <op2>

> <op1>: GPR
<op2>: adr:8, \#imm:8, GPR, @idm
Operation: $\quad<o p 1>\leftarrow<$ op1> ^ <op2>
XOR performs the bit-wise exclusive-OR operation on <op1> and <op2> and stores the result in <op1>.

Flags: $\quad$ Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
$\mathbf{N}$ : set if result is negative. Reset if not.
Example: $\quad$ Given: IDH:IDL0 $=8080 \mathrm{~h}, \mathrm{DM}[8043 \mathrm{~h}]=26 \mathrm{~h}, \mathrm{R} 0=52 \mathrm{~h}, \mathrm{R} 1=14 \mathrm{~h}$, eid $=1$

| XOR | $R 0,43 h$ | $/ / R 0 \leftarrow 74 h$ |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| XOR | $R 1, \# 00101100 b$ | $/ / R 1 \leftarrow 38 h$ |
| XOR | $R 0, R 1$ | $/ / R 0 \leftarrow 46 h$ |
| XOR | $R 0, @ I D 0$ | $/ / R 0 \leftarrow R 0 \wedge^{\wedge} D M[8080 h]$, IDL0 $\leftarrow 81 \mathrm{~h}$ |
| XOR | $R 0, @[I D 0-2]$ | $/ / R 0 \leftarrow R 0 \wedge^{\wedge} D M[807 E h]$, IDL0 $\leftarrow 7 E h$ |
| XOR | $R 0, @[I D 0+3]!$ | $/ / R 0 \leftarrow R 0 \wedge^{\wedge} D M[8083 h]$, IDL0 $\leftarrow 80 h$ |
| XOR | $R 0, @[I D 0-5]!$ | $/ / R 0 \leftarrow R 0{ }^{\wedge} D M[807 B h]$, IDL0 $\leftarrow 80 h$ |

In the last two instructions, the value of IDH:IDL0 is not changed. Refer to Table 8-5 for more detailed explanation about this addressing mode.
idm = IDx+offset:5, [IDx-offset:5], [IDx+offset:5]!, [IDx-offset:5]! (IDx = ID0 or ID1)

NOTES

CLOCK CIRCUIT

## OVERVIEW

The S3CB519 microcontroller has two oscillator circuits: a main system clock circuit and a subsystem clock circuit. The CPU and peripheral hardware operate at the system clock frequency supplied by these circuits.
The maximum CPU clock frequency is determined by PCON register setting.

## SYSTEM CLOCK CIRCUIT

The system clock circuit has the following components:

- External crystal or ceramic resonator oscillation source (or an external clock source)
- Oscillator stop and wake-up functions
- Programmable frequency divider for the CPU clock (fosc divided by 1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, 128)
- System clock control register, PCON


Figure 9-1. System Clock Circuit Diagram


Figure 9-2. Power Control Register (PCON)


Figure 9-3. Oscillator Control Register (OSCCON)

NOTES

## 10 nRESET AND POWER-DOWN

## OVERVIEW

During a power-on reset, the voltage at $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}$ goes to High level and the nRESET pin is forced to Low level. The reset signal is input through a schmitt trigger circuit where it is then synchronized with the CPU clock. This procedure brings S3CB519 into a known operating status.

For the time for CPU clock oscillation to stabilize, the nRESET pin must be held to low level for a minimum time interval after the power supply comes within tolerance. (For the minimum time interval, see the electrical characteristic).

In summary, the following sequence of events occurs during a reset operation:

- All interrupts are disabled.
- The watchdog function (basic timer) is enabled.
- Ports are set to input mode except port 5 which is set to output mode.
- Peripheral control and data registers are disabled and reset to their default hardware values.
- The program counter (PC) is loaded with the program reset address in the ROM, 00000H.
- When the programmed oscillation stabilization time interval has elapsed, the instruction stored in ROM location 00000 H is fetched and executed.


## NOTE

To program the duration of the oscillation stabilization interval, make the appropriate settings to the watchdog timer control register, WDTCON, before entering STOP mode.

NOTES

## OVERVIEW

The S3CB519 has five I/O ports (P0-P4) for general I/O and one output port (P5) dedicated for the key-strobe with LCD segment data.

## PORT 0

Two 8-bit control registers are used to configure the port 0 pins: P0CONH for pins P0.4-P0.6 and P0CONL for pins P0.0-P0.3. Each byte contains four bit-pairs and each bit-pair configures one pin. The P0CONH and the P0CONL registers also control the alternative functions.

For example, when bits 4 and 5 of POCONL are " 00 ", P0.2 is selected for the input mode.
In this mode, you can set P0.2 as a normal input or an interrupt 2 or a timer 0 clock input by controlling POINT and TOCON.

POINT and POEDGE registers control the interrupt functions for INT0-INT6.


Figure 11-1. Port 0 Low-byte Control Register (POCONL)


Figure 11-2. Port 0 High-byte Control Register (POCONH)


Figure 11-3. Port 0 Interrupt Control Register (POINT)


Figure 11-4. Port 0 Interrupt Edge Control Register (POEDGE)

## PORT 1

P1CON contains four bit-pairs and bit-pair configures one pin. P1INT controls the interrupt function for KS0-KS3. When the alternative mode is selected, KS0-KS3 can be used as key scan inputs with P5 (shared with LCD SEG) strobe.

Port 1 Control Register (P1CON) 24H, R/W


Figure 11-5. Port 1 Control Register (P1CON)


NOTE: When key scan mode, P1INT setting has no meaning

Figure 11-6. Port 1 Interrupt Control Register (P1INT)

## PORT 2

P2CON and P3CON contain two nibbles each and each nibble configures four pins.
Port 2 is shared by SEG48-SEG55, and Port 3 is shared by SEG40-SEG47.


Figure 11-7. Port 2 Control Register (P2CON)

## PORT 3



Figure 11-8. Port 3 Control Register (P3CON)

## PORT 4

P4CON contains two nibbles and each nibble configures four pins.
Port 4 is shared by COM8-COM15, and I/O and COM switching are up to LMOD register.


Figure 11-9. Port 4 Control Register (P4CON)

## PORT 5

Port 5 , which has 15 pins, can be controlled by P5CON but cannot be used as normal I/O.
Port 5 is shared by SEG pins and makes the key-strobe. (for details, see LCD chapter).
When port 1 is selected as the alternative mode (key scan input) and the key strobe function of port 5 is enabled, port 5 data register has the key-strobe value of the time when the key scan interrupt occurs.

For example, when P5.3 outputs strobe and any of port 1 are "Low"-state, forcing the key scan interrupt, port 5 data register has the value " 3 ". For P5.9, port 5 data register has " 9 ".


Figure 11-10. Port 5 Control Register (P5CON)

NOTES

## 12 <br> BASIC TIMER/WATCHDOG TIMER

## OVERVIEW

WDTCON controls basic timer clock selection and watchdog timer clear bit.
Basic timer is used in two different ways:

- As a clock source to watchdog timer to provide an automatic reset mechanism in the event of a system malfunction (When watchdog function is enabled in ROM code option)
- To signal the end of the required oscillation stabilization interval after a reset or stop mode release.

The reset value of basic timer clock selection bits is decided by the ROM code option. (see the section on ROM code option for details). After reset, programmer can select the basic timer input clock using WDTCON.

Watchdog timer provides an automatic reset mechanism in the event of a system malfunction (When watchdog function is enabled in ROM code option)
When watchdog function is enabled by the ROM code option, programmer must set WDTCON. 0 periodically within every $2048 \times$ basic timer input clock time to prevent system reset.


Figure 12-1. Watchdog Timer Control Register (WDTCON)

## BLOCK DIAGRAM



Figure 12-2. Basic Timer \& Watchdog Timer Functional Block Diagram

## WATCH TIMER

## OVERVIEW

Watch timer functions include real-time and watch-time measurements.
After the watch timer starts and time elapses, the watch timer interrupt is automatically set to "1", and interrupt requests commence in $3.91 \mathrm{~ms}, 0.25 \mathrm{~s}, 0.5 \mathrm{~s}$ or 1 second.
The watch timer can generate a steady $0.5 \mathrm{kHz}, 1 \mathrm{kHz}, 2 \mathrm{kHz}$ or 4 kHz signal to the BUZ output when the main system clock frequency is 4.19 MHz . The watch timer supplies the clock frequency for the LCD controller ( $f_{\text {LCD }}$ ) and BLD. Therefore, if the watch timer is disabled, the LCD and BLD controller do not operate.

- Real-time and Watch-time measurements
- Clock source generation for LCD controller
- Buzzer output frequency generator

Table 13-1. Watch Timer Control Register (WTCON): 8-Bit R/W

| Bit Name | Values |  | Function | Address |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| WTCON. 7 | - |  | Not used | 70H |
| WTCON. 6 | - |  | Not used |  |
| WTCON .5-. 4 | 0 | 0 | 0.5 kHz buzzer (BUZ) signal output |  |
|  | 0 | 1 | 1 kHz buzzer (BUZ) signal output |  |
|  | 1 | 0 | 2 kHz buzzer (BUZ) signal output |  |
|  | 1 | 1 | 4 kHz buzzer (BUZ) signal output |  |
| WTCON .3-. 2 | 0 | 0 | Set watch timer interrupt to 1 sec . |  |
|  | 0 | 1 | Set watch timer interrupt to 0.5 sec . |  |
|  | 1 | 0 | Set watch timer interrupt to 0.25 sec . |  |
|  | 1 | 1 | Set watch timer interrupt to 3.91 ms . |  |
| WTCON. 1 | 0 |  | Selects ( $\mathrm{fx} / 128$ or $\mathrm{fx} / 64$ ) as the watch timer clock |  |
|  | 1 |  | Selects the subsystem clock as watch timer clock |  |
| WTCON. 0 | 0 |  | Stops the watch timer counter; clears the frequency dividing circuits |  |
|  | 1 |  | Runs the watch timer counter |  |

NOTE: Main system clock frequency ( fx ) is assumed to be 4.19 MHz .

## WATCH TIMER CIRCUIT DIAGRAM



Figure 13-1. Watch Timer Circuit Diagram

## 14 <br> 16-BIT TIMER (8-BIT TIMER A \& B)

## OVERVIEW

The 16 -bit timer is used in one 16 -bit timer or two 8 -bit timers. When Bit 2 of TBCON is "1" , it operates as one 16 -bit timer. When it is " 0 ", it operates as two 8 -bit timers. When it operates as one 16 -bit timer, the TBCNT's clock source can be selected by setting TBCON.3. If TBCON. 3 is " 0 ", the timer A's overflow would be TBCNT's clock source. If it is " 1 ", the timer A's interval out would be TBCNT's clock source. The timer clock source can be selected by the S/W.


NOTE: 8 -Bit Timer A is only available when TBCON. 2 is setted " 0 " for 8 -Bit operation mode.

Figure 14-1. Timer A Control Register (TACON)

## INTERVAL TIMER FUNCTION

The timer A\&B module can generate an interrupt: the Timer A and/or Timer B match interrupt (TAINT, TBINT). In interval timer mode, a match signal is generated when the counter value is identical to the value written to the reference data register, TADATA/TBDATA. The match signal generates Timer A and/or Timer B match interrupt and clears the counter.

TB pin can be toggled whenever the timer B match interrupt occurs if I/O port setting is appropriate.


Timer B mode selection bit:
$1 \times 1=$ TBCLK (Not used in this device-no input clock)
$0=8$-bit operation mode
$1=16$-bit operation mode
When 16 bit operation Timer B input clock selection bit:
$0=$ Timer A overflow out
$1=\operatorname{Timer} A$ interval out

NOTE: At 16-bit operation mode 16-bit counter clock input is selected by TACON .6, .5, . 4

Figure 14-2. Timer B Control Register (TBCON)


Figure 14-3. Timer A, B Function Block Diagram

## NOTES

## 15 <br> 8-BIT TIMER (TIMER 0)

## OVERVIEW

The 8 -bit timer 0 is an 8 -bit general-purpose timer/counter. Timer 0 has three operating modes, one of which you select using the appropriate TOCON setting:

- Interval timer mode (Toggle output at T0 pin)
- Capture input mode with a rising or falling edge trigger at the TOCAP pin
- PWM mode (TOPWM)


## FUNCTION DESCRIPTION

## Timer 0 Interrupts

The Timer 0 module can generate two interrupts: the Timer 0 overflow interrupt (TOOVF), and the Timer 0 match/ capture interrupt (TOINT).

## Interval Timer Function

The Timer 0 module can generate an interrupt: the Timer 0 match interrupt (TOINT).
In interval timer mode, a match signal is generated(,) and T0 is toggled when the counter value is identical to the value written to the T0 reference data register, TODATA. The match signal generates a Timer 0 match interrupt and clears the counter.
If, for example, you write the value 10 H to TODATA and OAH to TOCON, the counter will increment until it reaches 10 H . At this point, the T0 interrupt request is generated and the counter value is reset and counting resumes.

## Pulse Width Modulation Mode

Pulse width modulation (PWM) mode lets you program the width (duration) of the pulse that is output at the TOPWM pin. As in interval timer mode, a match signal is generated when the counter value is identical to the value written to the Timer 0 data register. In PWM mode, however, the match signal does not clear the counter but can generate a match interrupt. The counter runs continuously, overflowing at FFH, and then repeats the incrementing from 00H. Whenever an overflow occurs, an overflow(OVF) interrupt can be generated.
Although you can use the match or the overflow interrupt in PWM mode, interrupts are not typically used in PWMtype applications. Instead, the pulse at the TOPWM pin is held to High level as long as the reference data value is less than or equal to $(\leq)$ the counter value, and then the pulse is held to Low level for as long as the data value is greater than $(>)$ the counter value. One pulse width is equal to $t_{C L K} \times 256$.

## Capture Mode

In capture mode, a signal edge that is detected at the TOCAP pin opens a gate and loads the current counter value into the T0 data register. You can select the rising or falling edges to trigger this operation.
Timer 0 also gives you capture input source: the signal edge at the TOCAP pin. You select the capture input by setting the value of the Timer 0 capture input selection bit in the port control register.
Both kinds of Timer 0 interrupts can be used in capture mode: the Timer 0 overflow interrupt is generated whenever a counter overflow occurs; the Timer 0 match/capture interrupt is generated whenever the counter value is loaded into the T0 data register.
By reading the captured data value in TODATA and assuming a specific value for the Timer 0 clock frequency, you can calculate the pulse width (duration) of the signal that is being input at the TOCAP pin.

## TIMER 0 CONTROL REGISTER (TOCON)

You use the Timer 0 control register, TOCON, to

- Select the Timer 0 operating mode (interval timer, capture mode, or PWM mode)
- Select the Timer 0 input clock frequency
- Clear the Timer 0 counter, TOCNT
- Enable the Timer 0 overflow interrupt or Timer 0 match/capture interrupt

A reset clears TOCON to ' $00 \mathrm{H}^{\prime}$ '. This sets Timer 0 to normal interval timer mode, selects an input clock frequency of $\mathrm{f}_{\mathrm{OS}}{ }^{1024}$, and disables all Timer 0 interrupts. You can clear the Timer 0 counter at any time during normal operation by writing a "1" to TOCON.3.


Figure 15-1. Timer 0 Control Register (TOCON)

## BLOCK DIAGRAM



Figure 15-2. Timer 0 Functional Block Diagram

## 16 <br> SERIAL I/O INTERFACE

## OVERVIEW

The SIO module can transmit or receive 8-bit serial data at a frequency determined by its corresponding control register settings. To ensure flexible data transmission rates, you can select an internal or external clock source.

## PROGRAMMING PROCEDURE

To program the SIO modules, follow these basic steps:

1. Configure the $\mathrm{I} / \mathrm{O}$ pins at port (SO,nSCK, SI) by loading the appropriate value to the POCONH register, if necessary.
2. Load an 8 -bit value to the SIOCON register to properly configure the serial I/O module. In this operation, SIOCON. 2 must be set to "1" to enable the data shifter.
3. For interrupt generation, set the serial I/O interrupt enable bit (SIOCON.1) to "1".
4. When you transmit data to the serial buffer, write data to SIODATA and set SIOCON. 3 to 1 , the shift operation starts.
5. When the shift operation (transmit/receive) is completed, the SIO pending bit is set to "1", and a SIO interrupt request is generated.

## SIO CONTROL REGISTER (SIOCON)



Figure 16-1. Serial I/O Control Register (SIOCON)

## SIO PRE-SCALER REGISTER (SIOPS)

The values stored in the SIO pre-scaler registers, SIOPS, lets you determine the SIO clock rate (baud rate) as follows:

Baud rate $=$ Input clock/(Pre-scaler value +1 ), or SCLK input clock
where the input clock is $\mathrm{fxx} / 4$


Figure 16-2. SIO Pre-scaler Register (SIOPS)

## BLOCK DIAGRAM



Figure 16-3. SIO Functional Block Diagram

## SERIAL I/O TIMING DIAGRAMS



Figure 16-4. Serial I/O Timing in Transmit/Receive Mode (Tx at falling, SIOCON. $4=0$ )


Figure 16-5. Serial I/O Timing in Transmit/Receive Mode (Tx at rising, SIOCON. 4 = 1)

## 17

## BATTERY LEVEL DETECTOR

## OVERVIEW

The S3CB519 microcontroller has a built-in BLD (Battery Level Detector) circuit which allows detection of power voltage drop of an external input level or internal $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}$.
When external input is selected by POCONL, detection voltage level can be adjusted through the external divided resistors ratio on BLD pin. Internal reference voltage is 1.2 V .

After detection, BLD is automatically disabled, and EOBLD bit is set.
Because the clock for BLD comes from the watch timer, watch timer must be enabled to use BLD.


Figure 17-1. Voltage Level Detection Circuit


Figure 17-2. Battery Level Detector Control Register (BLDCON)

## 18 <br> LCD CONTROLLER/DRIVER

## OVERVIEW

This microcontroller can directly drive the ( 56 segments $\times 16$ commons) LCD panel. Data written to the LCD display RAM can be transferred to the segment signal pins automatically without program control.
When a subsystem clock is selected as the LCD clock source, the LCD display is enabled even during Idle modes.

## LCD RAM ADDRESS AREA

LCD RAM can be addressed by 8 -bit RAM access instructions. When the bit value of a display segment is " 1 ", the LCD display is turned on; when the bit value is " 0 ", the display is turned off.
Display RAM data are sent out through segment pins SEG0-SEG55 using a direct memory access (DMA) method that is synchronized with the f ${ }_{\text {LCD }}$ signal. RAM addresses in this location that are not used for the LCD display can be allocated to general-purpose use.

## LCD RAM (RAM BANK 12)



Figure 18-1. LCD Display Data RAM Organization

## LCD CONTROL REGISTER (LCON)

LCON controls LCD dividing resistor and LCD display.


Figure 18-2. LCD Control Register (LCON)

## LCD VOLTAGE DIVIDING RESISTORS



Figure 18-3. Internal Voltage Dividing Resistor Connection

## LCD MODE REGISTER (LMOD)

LMOD controls LCD bias, duty, and clock.

LCD Mode Register (LMOD)


Bias selection bits:
$0=1 / 4$ bias
$1=1 / 5$ bias
Duty selection bits:
$00=1 / 8$ duty (COM0-COM7 select)
$01=1 / 12$ duty (COM0-COM11 select)
$1 \mathrm{x}=1 / 16$ duty (COM0-COM15 select)

|  | LCD Clock (LCDCK) |  |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | $1 / 8$ duty (COM0-7) | $1 / 12$ duty (COM0-11) | $1 / 16$ duty (COM0-15) |
| 00 | $\mathrm{fw} / 2^{7}(256 \mathrm{~Hz})$ | $\mathrm{fw} / 2^{6}(512 \mathrm{~Hz})$ | $\mathrm{fw} / 2^{6}(512 \mathrm{~Hz})$ |
| 01 | $\mathrm{fw} / 2^{6}(512 \mathrm{~Hz})$ | $\mathrm{fw} / 2^{5}(1024 \mathrm{~Hz})$ | $\mathrm{fw} / 2^{5}(1024 \mathrm{~Hz})$ |
| 10 | $\mathrm{fw} / 2^{5}(1024 \mathrm{~Hz})$ | $\mathrm{fw} / 2^{4}(2048 \mathrm{~Hz})$ | $\mathrm{fw} / 2^{4}(2048 \mathrm{~Hz})$ |
| 11 | $\mathrm{fw} / 2^{4}(2048 \mathrm{~Hz})$ | $\mathrm{fw} / 2^{3}(4096 \mathrm{~Hz})$ | $\mathrm{fw} / 2^{3}(4096 \mathrm{~Hz})$ |

Watch timer (fw) selection bits:
(When main system clock is supplied to the watch timer source.) $0=\mathrm{fLCD}=4096 \mathrm{~Hz}$ when $\mathrm{fw}=\mathrm{fx} / 128(32.768 \mathrm{kHz} @ \mathrm{fx}=4.19 \mathrm{MHz})$
$1=\mathrm{fLCD}=8192 \mathrm{~Hz}$ when $\mathrm{fw}=\mathrm{fx} / 64(65.563 \mathrm{kHz} @ \mathrm{fx}=4.19 \mathrm{MHz})$

Figure 18-4. LCD Mode Register (LMOD)

## LCD CONTRAST CONTROL REGISTER (LCNST)

LCNST controls LCD contrast.


Figure 18-5. LCD Contrast Register (LCNST)


Figure 18-6. LCD Signal Waveforms (1/16 Duty, 1/5 Bias)


Figure 18-6. LCD Signal Waveforms (1/16 Duty, 1/5 Bias) (Continued)

… VLC1

$\cdots$ VLC1
$\cdots$ VLC2
$\cdots$ VLC3 $=$ VLC4
$\cdots$ VLC5
$\cdots 0$ V
$\cdots-$ VLC5
$\cdots-$ VLC3 $=-$ VLC4
$\cdots-$ VLC2
$\cdots-$ VLC1

Figure 18-7. LCD Signal Waveforms (1/8 Duty, 1/4 Bias)

## LCD KEY SCAN

When P5CON. 7 is set, strobe signal is output to P5.0/SEG39-P5.15/SEG24 during normal SEG output, and the strobe signal number is selected by P5CON setting.
Key input is acquired from KS0/P1.0-KS3/P1.3 and is set in P1CON.
If any pin of P5.0-P5.15 is set only to SEG in P5CON, the selected pin does not output the key strobe signal.
If any of P1.0-P1.3 is set to anything other than the alternative mode (key scan mode), the selected pin acts as a normal I/O.
When P5.0/SEG39-P5.15/SEG24 are set as key strobe, selected key strobe is output, pin by pin, continuously with a selected interval and duration.

When KS0/P1.0-KS3/P1.3 are set as an alternative mode (key scan input), KS0-KS3 state is normally highimpedance, and when SEGx strobe is out, KS0/P1.0-KS3/P1.3 setting is changed to input pull-up state.
The data (Port 1) is input right before the strobe disappears, and if any "Low" state appears, an interrupt occurs.
When the key scan interrupt occurs, user can read the Interrupt request register for the key input state and the Port 5 data register for the key strobe state. The data of the selected pin, P5, is not changed until next strobe occurs. Port 1 data register has invalid data when in the key input state.

Port 5 data register value is '0' for P5.0 strobe, '1' for P5.1, ' 2 ' for P5.2, ...'0FH' for P5.15 strobe.


NOTES:

1. Tframe

When P5.0-P5.3 is used, Tframe is Tinterval x 4,
When P5.0-P5.7 is used, Tframe is Tinterval x 8 , When P5.0-P5.11 is used, Tframe is Tinterval $\times 12$, When P5.0-P5.15 is used, Tframe is Tinterval $\times 16$.
2. Tinterval, Tstrobe value is set by setting P5CON value.

Figure 18-8. LCD Waveform when Key Strobe Signal is Active

NOTES

## 19 <br> A/D CONVERTER

## OVERVIEW

The ADC is Sigma-Delta type ADC for speech and telephony applications. The ADC contains both digital IIR/FIR filters, and an on-chip voltage reference circuit is included to allow supply operations.

## FEATURES

## Sigma Delta ADC.

- 256X oversampling
- On chip decimation filter
- On chip voltage reference circuitry


## A/D CONVERTER CONTROL REGISTER (ADCON)

User can select the A/D input clock for dividing higher crystal by controlling ADCON.
A/D converted data are 14-bit resolution and are input to ADDATAH (High byte), ADDATAL (Low byte) in 16-bit data format. Because A/DC use 256X over-sampling, for 8 kHz sampling, when crystal is $2.048 \mathrm{MHz}(=8 \mathrm{kHz} \times 256)$, user must select fx as AD/DA input clock.
And when crystal is $4.096 \mathrm{MHz}(=2 \times 8 \mathrm{kHz} \times 256)$, user must select $\mathrm{fx} / 2$ as AD/DA input clock.


Figure 19-1. A/DC Control Register (ADCON)


Figure 19-2. A/D Converter Block Diagram


Figure 19-3. Application Example

SNMSUNF

## 20

## D/A CONVERTER

## OVERVIEW

This MCU has an 8-bit Digital-to-Analog converter with R-2R structure. This DAC (Digital - to Analog converter) is used to generate analog voltage, $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DA}}$, with 256 -steps $\left(2^{8}\right)$. This function is controlled by the DAC mode register (DACON).
To enable the converter, the DACON. 0 must be set to " 1 ". To generate an analog voltage ( $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DA}}$ ), load the appropriate value to DADATA. The level of the analog voltage is determined by DADATA.

When a user writes data to DADATA, the contents of GR13 is shifted to GR14, GR12 to GR13, GR11 to GR12, and DADATA to GR11.
The content of GR24 is output to DAO. When GR24 is output and some time passes, the contents of GR23 is shifted to GR24, GR22 to GR23, GR21 to GR22. After all the contents of GR21-GR24 is out to DAO, GR11-GR14 will be copied to GR21-GR24.
Four consequent DA data will be written to DADATA every AD/DA interrupt. Then the four data will be out with same interval until the next AD/DA interrupt occurs.
The interval between DAO and the next DAO is about $31 \mu \mathrm{sec}$ when a 4.096 MHz oscillator is used, and ADC clock is $\mathrm{fx} / 2$.

The interval clock comes from the ADC. (See ADCON).


Figure 20-1. D/A Converter Circuit Diagram

## SMMSUNF



Figure 20-2. D/A Converter Timing Diagram

## D/A CONVERTER DATA REGISTER (DADATA)

The DADATA specifies the digital data to generate analog voltage.
nRESET initializes the DADATA value to " 00 H ". The D/A converter output value, $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DAO}}$, is calculated by following formula.
$\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DAO}}=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{PP}} \times(\mathrm{n} / 256)+\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{BIAS}}-\frac{1}{2} \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{PP}}(\mathrm{n}=0-255$, DADATA value $)$, where, $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{PP}}$ and $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{BIAS}}$ is specified in electrical data and the $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{PP}}$ is a regulated output voltage.

If DADATA value is $0, \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{DAO}}=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{BIAS}}-\frac{1}{2} \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{PP}}$
If DADATA value is $128, \mathrm{~V}_{\text {DAO }}=\mathrm{V}_{\text {BIAS }}$
If DADATA value is $255, \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{DAO}}=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{BIAS}}+\frac{1}{2} \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{PP}}$

## D/A CONVERTER CONTROL REGISTER (DACON)

DACON values are set to logic " 00 H " following nRESET, and this value disables DAC.


Figure 20-3. D/A Control Register (DACON)

NOTES

## MAC816

## MAC816 ARCHITECTURE OVERVIEW

MAC816 is a 16-bit fixed-point DSP coprocessor for low-end DSP applications. It is designed as one of the DSP coprocessor engines for CalmRISC, which targets towards cost-sensitive low-end multimedia DSP applications. The generic coprocessor instructions for CalmRISC are renamed according to the intended operations on MAC816, including the DSP data type, and the DSP addressing mode. Below represented is the top block diagram of MAC816.


Figure 21-1. Top Block Diagram

## SMMSUNF

The MAC816 building blocks consist of:

- Multiplier and Accumulator Unit (MAU)
- Arithmetic Unit (AU)
- RAM Pointer Unit (RPU)
- Interface Unit (IU)

Basically, MAU (Multiplier and Accumulator Unit) is built around an 8-bit by 16-bit parallel multiplier and a 32-bit adder for multiply-and-accumulate (MAC) operations. Hence, 16-bit by 16-bit MAC operations are performed in two cycles in MAC816. AU performs 16-bit arithmetic and shift operations for DSP. RPU of MAC816 consists of 3 data memory pointers and 2 control blocks for the pointer modulo calculation. The pointers are used for accessing the data memory for a 16-bit data operand. Since two 16-bit data operands can be fetched simultaneously in a single cycle through XD[15:0] and YD[15:0] for MAC operation, the data memory should be partitioned into two parts: X and Y memory. IU is for the communication between CalmRISC and MAC816. It decodes coprocessor interface signals from CalmRISC and controls the data paths in MAC816, according to the decoding result.

Most of MAC816 instructions are 1-word instruction, while several instructions which need 16-bit immediate value are 2-word instruction.

## PROGRAMMER'S MODEL

In this chapter, the important features of MAC816 are discussed in detail. How the data memory is organized is discussed and the explanation of registers follows. Last, the host interface with CalmRISC will be explained.

## DATA MEMORY ACCESSES

The total data memory address space for MAC816 is 32 K -word. The 32K-word data memory space is physically divided into XM (X area memory) and YM (Y area memory). This memory is actually shared with the host processor (CalmRISC). The host processor accesses the 64K-byte data memory in byte width, otherwise MAC816 accesses it in 2-byte width. MAC816 has two types of addressing modes. RPU can generate two 15-bit addresses every instruction cycle which can be post-modified.


Figure 21-2. Data Memory Organization

Table 21-1. RPU(RAM Pointer Unit) Registers

| Registers |  | Mnemonics | Description | Reset Value |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Mreg1 | RPi | RP0 | RAM Pointer register 0 | Unknown |
|  |  | RP1 | RAM Pointer register 1 | Unknown |
|  |  | RP2 | RAM Pointer register 2 | Unknown |
|  |  | RPD | RAM Pointer for short direct addressing | Unknown |
| MCi |  | MC0 | Modulo Control register $\mathbf{0}$ for RP0/RP1 | Unknown |
|  |  | MC1 | Modulo Control register 1 for RP2 | Unknown |



Figure 21-3. RPU (RAM Pointer Unit) Block Diagram

## Short Direct Memory Addressing Mode

Six-bits embedded in the instruction code as LSBs and 9-bits from the RPD[14:6] of RPD register as MSB compose the 15 -bit address to the data memory address. This can be used with some instructions operating an $\mathrm{Ai}(\mathrm{A} / \mathrm{B}$ register in AU) operand. In "load/store mreg1" instruction, a 4-bit embedded in the instruction code as LSBs and 11bits from the RPD[14:4] of RPD register as MSB compose the 15-bit address to the data memory address. This can be used to load/store RAM pointer register from/to data memory.

## Indirect Memory Addressing Mode

The RPi registers of RPU are used as a 15-bit address for indirect addressing XM (X area memory) or YM (Y area memory). Some instructions can simultaneously access the XM and YM, and then RPO is used for XM and RP2 for YM. In indirect addressing mode, RPi register is modified by $+1,-1,-2$, and +2 after the addressing. The MSB of RPi register enables modulo opera tion of the RPi modification. The RPU registers are divided into two groups of simultaneous addressing over XA and YA: X-memory is addressed by RP0 and RP1 with MC0 and Y-memory is addressed by RP2 with MC1. RPi from both groups can be used for both XA and YA for instruction, which uses only one address register. In this instruction the XM and YM can be viewed as a single continuous data memory space.

Table 21-2. RPi register bit information

| Bit position | Value | Description |
| :---: | :---: | :--- |
| $[14: 0]$ | $0 \mathrm{H}-7 \mathrm{FFFH}$ | Data memory $(\mathrm{XM} / \mathrm{YM})$ address |
| [15]{} | 0 | Modulo mode disable |
|  | 1 | Modulo mode enable |

## Modulo Control Registers (MCi)

MCi controls RP0, RP1 and RP2 register modifications after indirect memory accessing. MCi has an upper boundary value in $\mathrm{MCi}[9: 0]$, a step size in $\mathrm{MCi}[12: 10]$ and a modulo size information in MCi[15:13]. The upper boundary determines the upper limit of the modulo body. The modulo size information determines the lower limit and size of the modulo body as shown below. For example, assume RP0 $=87 \mathrm{FFH}$ and $\mathrm{MCO}=03 F F H$ : If "@RP0+" is used on the operand of the instruction, the data memory contents pointed by "07FFH" is accessed, and RP0 is updated to " 8400 H " after memory accessing. Assume RP0 $=07 \mathrm{FFH}$ and $\mathrm{MCO}=03 \mathrm{FFH}$ : If "@RP0+" is used on the operand of the instruction, the data memory contents pointed by "07FFH" is accessed, and RP0 is updated to "0800H" after memory accessing.

| Bit position | Value | Description |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| [9:0] | OH-3FFH | Upper boundary |
| [12:10] | 000 | Step size $=+2$ |
|  | 001 | Step size = - 2 |
|  | 010-111 | Reserved |
| [15:13] | 000 | Maximum modulo size $=1024$ ( 0 H to 3FFH), <br> Modulo body = RPi[14:10]:0000000000 to RPi[14:10]:MCi[9:0] |
|  | 001 | Maximum modulo size $=8(0 \mathrm{H}$ to 7 H$)$, <br> Modulo body $=$ RPi[14:3]:000 to RPi[14:3]:MCi[2:0] |
|  | 010 | Maximum modulo size $=16$ ( 0 H to 0 FH ), <br> Modulo body = RPi[14:4]:0000 to RPi[14:4]:MCi[3:0] |
|  | 011 | Maximum modulo size $=32(0 \mathrm{H}$ to 1 FH$)$, <br> Modulo body = RPi[14:5]:00000 to RPi[14:5]:MCi[4:0] |
|  | 100 | Maximum modulo size $=64$ ( 0 H to 3FH), <br> Modulo body = RPi[14:6]:000000 to RPi[14:6]:MCi[5:0] |
|  | 101 | Maximum modulo size $=128$ (0H to 7FH), <br> Modulo body = RPi[14:7]:0000000 to RPi[14:7]:MCi[6:0] |
|  | 110 | Maximum modulo size $=256(0 \mathrm{H}$ to 0FFH), <br> Modulo body = RPi[14:8]:00000000 to RPi[14:8]:MCi[7:0] |
|  | 111 | Maximum modulo size $=512(0 \mathrm{H}$ to 1FFH), <br> Modulo body $=$ RPi[14:9]:000000000 to RPi[14:9]:MCi[8:0] |

## COMPUTATION UNIT

The computation unit contains two main units, the Multiplier and Accumulator Unit (MAU) and Arithmetic Unit (AU).


Figure 21-4. Computation Unit Block Diagram

## Multiplier and Accumulator Unit (MAU)

The MAU consists of a 8 by 16 to 24 bit parallel multiplier, two 16 -bit input registers ( X and Y ), a product output shifter, and 32 -bit product and accumulator register(MA). The multiplier performs signed by signed, signed by unsigned, unsigned by signed, or unsigned by unsigned multiplication. By clearing "MSR1[2] (or M816)", the MAU can perform 16 by 16 to 32 bit parallel multiplication in 2 cycles. After the multiplier instruction, if a read instruction of MA is followed, previous MA register value will be read out because. During 16 by 16 multiplication, in the second cycle of multiplication, the instruction of MA modification can cause illegal multiplication results. Thus, multiplier instruction should not be followed by MA register writing. The "MV" flag is set if arithmetic overflow occurs after an arithmetic operation in the MA register, and if set "OPM", the MA register is saturated to a 32-bit positive (7FFFFFFFH) or negative ( 80000000 H ). The MA register is not updated by loading X and Y registers. Hence, the X and $Y$ registers can be used as a temporary data registers. The registers in MAU are as shown in the table.

| Mnemonics | Description | Reset Value |
| :--- | :--- | :---: |
| X | MAU X input register | Unknown |
| Y | MAU Y input register | Unknown |
| MAL | MAU Accumulator register, MA[15:0] | Unknown |
| MAH or MA | MAU Accumulator register, MA[31:16] | Unknown |

## Arithmetic Unit (AU)

The AU consists of 16 -bit adder, 1 -bit shifter, and two result registers ( $A$ and $B$ ). The $A U$ receives one operand from Ai and another operand from XB or Ai. Operations between the two Ai registers are also possible. The source and destination Ai register of an AU instruction are always the same. The XB bus is used for transferring one of the register content, an immediate operand, or the content of a data memory location as a source operand. The AU results are stored in one of the Ai registers. The AU can perform add, subtract, compare, and shift operations. It uses two's complement arithmetic operations. The AU evaluates the status flags of an arithmetic result. The "V" flag is set if arithmetic overflow occurs after an arithmetic operation in A or B register, and if set to "OPA" or "OPB", the A or B register is saturated to a 16-bit positive (7FFFH) or negative ( 8000 H ). Data transfer between MAC816 and the host processor can be achieved via A or B register. The host processor (CalmRISC) can directly access A and B registers of MAC816 through "CLD GPR,imm" or "CLD imm,GPR" instruction.

## STATUS REGISTERS

## Status Register 0 : MSRO

MSRO is mainly reserved for flagging an AU result , for protecting control overflow, and for indicating test results.

| Bit Name | Bit |  |
| :---: | :---: | :--- |
| C | 0 | Carry flag |
| V | 1 | Overflow flag |
| Z | 2 | Zero flag |
| N | 3 | Negative flag |
| T | 4 | Test result flag |
| OPA | 5 | Overflow Protection control for A register |
| OPB | 6 | Overflow Protection control for B register |
| - | $15-7$ | Reserved |

MSRO[0] (or C ) is the carry of AU executions. MSR0[1] (or V ) is the overflow flag of AU executions. It is set to 1 if and only if the carry-in into the 16-th bit position of addition/subtraction differs from the carry-out from the 16-th bit position. MSR0[2] (or Z ) is the zero flag, which is set to 1 if and only if the AU result is zero. MSRO[3] (or N) is the negative flag. Basically, the most significant bit (MSB) of $A U$ results becomes the $N$ flag. However, if an $A U$ instruction touches the overflow flag ( V ) like ADD, SUB, CP , etc, N flag is updated as exclusive- OR of V and the MSB of the AU result. This implies that even if an AU operation results in overflow, N flag is still valid. T flag is set to 1 if the result of "ETST cond." Instruction is true. MSRO[5] (or OPA) or MSRO[6] (or OPB) enables arithmetic saturation when an arithmetic overflow occurs in A or B register.

## Status Register 1 : MSR1

MSR1 consists of status flags of MAU operation, control bit for MAU, and selection bits of EC[I].

| Bit Name | Bit | Description |
| :---: | :---: | :--- |
| PSH1 | 0 | Multiplier product 1 bit shift control |
| OPM | 1 | Overflow Protection control for MA register |
| M816 | 2 | Multiplication mode control |
| MV | 3 | MA overflow flag |
| SEC0 | $7-4$ | EC[0] selection |
| SEC1 | $11-8$ | EC[1] selection |
| SEC2 | $15-12$ | EC[2] selection |

MSR1[0] (or PSH1) enables the product to shift by one bit to the left. MSR1[1] (or OPM) controls MA saturation. MSR1[2] (or M816) selects the operating mode for the multiplier. If M816=1, then the multiplier performs 8 by 16 bit to 24 bit multiplication. Otherwise (M816=0), the multiplier performs 16 by 16 bit to 32 bit multiplication in two cycles. MSR1[3] (or MV) is the overflow flag of MAU executions. It is set to 1 if an arithmetic overflow (32-bit overflow) occurs after an arithmetic operation in MAU. It is cleared by a processor reset or "ECR MV" and modified by writing to MSR1. SECi selects the combination of EC[I]. The flag information for the host processor is selected by setting SECi.

| Value( of SECi) | Description |
| :---: | :---: |
| 0000 | $\mathrm{EC}[\mathrm{I}]=\mathrm{Z}$, Set to 1 if Z flag is 1 . |
| 0001 | EC[I] $=$ not $Z$ |
| 0010 | $E C[I]=N$ |
| 0011 | $\mathrm{EC}[1]=\operatorname{not} \mathrm{N}$ |
| 0100 | $\mathrm{EC}[\mathrm{I}]=\mathrm{C}$ |
| 0101 | EC[I] = not C |
| 0110 | $\mathrm{EC}[1]=\mathrm{V}$ |
| 0111 | $\mathrm{EC}[1]=$ not V |
| 1000 | $\mathrm{EC}[1]=\mathrm{T}$ |
| 1001 | $\mathrm{EC}[1]=\mathrm{GT}$ |
| 1010 | $\mathrm{EC}[1]=\mathrm{LE}$ |
| 1011 | $\mathrm{EC}[1]=\mathrm{MV}$ |
| 1100 | $E C[I]=$ not MV |
| 1101-1111 | reserved |

## HOST INTERFACE

MAC816 is interfaced to the host processor according to CalmRISC coprocessor interface scheme explained below.
CalmRISC supports an efficient and seamless interface with coprocessors. By integrating a MAC (multiply and accumulate) with the CalmRISC core, not only microcontroller functions but also complex digital signal processing algorithms can be implemented in a single development platform (or MDS). CalmRISC has a set of dedicated signal pins, through which data/command/status are exchanged between CalmRISC and a coprocessor. Depicted below are the coprocessor signal pins and a figure of how two processors are interfaced.


Figure 21-5. Coprocessor Interface Diagram

As shown in the coprocessor interface diagram above, the coprocessor interface signals of CalmRISC are: SYSCP[11:0], nCOPID, nCLDID, nCLDWR, and EC[2:0]. The data are exchanged through the data buses, DI[7:0] and DO[7:0]. CalmRISC issues the command to a coprocessor through SYSCP[11:0] in COP instructions. The status of a coprocessor can be sent back to CalmRISC through EC[2:0], and these flags can be checked in the condition codes of branch instructions. The coprocessor instructions are listed in the following table.

Table 21-3. Coprocessor instructions

| Mnemonic | Op 1 | Op 2 | Description |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :--- |
| COP | \#imm:12 | - | Coprocessor operation |
| CLD | GPR | imm:8 | Data transfer from coprocessor into GPR |
| CLD | imm:8 | GPR | Data transfer of GPR to coprocessor |
| JP(or JR) <br> CALL <br> LNK | EC2-0 | label | Conditional branch with coprocessor status flags |

The coprocessor of CalmRISC does not have its own program memory (that is, passive coprocessor) as shown in Figure $7-1$. In fact, the coprocessor instructions are fetched and decoded by CalmRISC, which issues the command to the coprocessor through the interface signals. For example, if "COP \#imm:12" instruction is fetched, then the 12bit immediate value (imm:12) is loaded on SYSCP[11:0] signal with nCOPID active in ID/MEM stage, to request the coprocessor to perform the designated operation. The interpretation of the 12-bit immediate value is totally up to the coprocessor. The instruction set of the coprocessor is determined by arranging the 12 bit immediate field. In other words, CalmRISC only provides a set of generic coprocessor instructions, and its installation to a specific coprocessor instruction set can differ from one coprocessor to another. CLD Write instructions ("CLD imm:8, GPR") put the content of a GPR register of CalmRISC on the data bus (DO[7:0]) and issue the address(imm:8) of the coprocessor internal register on SYSCP[7:0] with nCLDID active and CLDWR active. CLD Read instructions ("CLD GPR, imm:8" in Table 1) work similarly, except that the content of the coprocessor internal register addressed by the 8 -bit immediate value is read into a GPR register through D[7:0] with $n C L D I D$ active and CLDWR inactive.

The timing diagram given below is a coprocessor instruction pipeline and shows the time the coprocessor performs the required operations. Suppose $\mathrm{I}_{2}$ is a coprocessor instruction. First, it is fetched and decoded by CalmRISC (at $\mathrm{t}=$ $\mathrm{T}(i-1)$ ). Once it is identified as a coprocessor instruction, CalmRISC indicates to the coprocessor the appropriate command through the coprocessor interface signals (at $t=T(i)$ ). Then the coprocessor performs the designated tasks at $t=T(i)$ and $t=T(i+1)$. Hence IF from CalmRISC and then ID/MEM and EX from the coprocessor constitute the pipeline for $l_{2}$. Similarly, if $l_{3}$ is a coprocessor instruction, the coprocessor's ID/MEM and EX stages replace the corresponding stages of CalmRISC.


Figure 21-6. Coprocessor Instruction Pipeline

In a multi-processor system, the data transfer between processors is an important factor to determine the efficiency of the overall system. Suppose an input data stream is accepted by a processor, in order to share data with other processors, there should be some efficient mechanism to transfer the data to the processors. In CalmRISC, data is transferred through a single shared data memory. The shared data memory in a multi-processor has some inherent problems such as data hazards and deadlocks. However, the coprocessor in CalmRISC accesses the shared data memory only at the time designated by CalmRISC, a time at which CalmRISC is guaranteed not to access the data memory, and therefore there is no contention over the shared data memory. Another advantage of the proposed scheme is that the coprocessor can access the data memory in its own bandwidth.

## INSTRUCTION SET

## GLOSSARY

This chapter describes the MAC816 instruction set, and the details of each instruction are listed in alphabetical order . The following notations are used for the description and mnemonics of assembler.

Table 21-4. Notation and Convention

| Notation | Interpretation |
| :---: | :--- |
| $<o p N>$ | Operand N. N can be omitted if there is only one operand. Typically, <op1> is the <br> destination (and source) operand and <op2> is the source operand. |
| adr:N | Content of memory location specified by N-bit address |
| $\#$ imm:N | N-bit immediate number |
| $\&$ | Bit-wise AND |
| 1 | Bit-wise OR |
| $\sim$ | Bit-wise NOT |
| $\wedge$ | Bit-wise XOR |
| $\mathrm{N}^{* *} \mathrm{M}$ | Mth power of N |
| $(\mathrm{N})_{M}$ | M-based number N |

Table 21-5. MAC816 Registers

| Notation | Operand Code | Mnemonic | Descriptions |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Mreg | 0000-0010 | - | Reserved |
|  | 0011 | MARN | MA[31:16] + MA[15], MA higher word with round-off |
|  | 0100 | Y | Y [15:0], multiplier Y input register |
|  | 0101 | X | X [15:0], multiplier X input register |
|  | 0110 | MAL | MA[15:0], multiplier accumulator lower 16-bits |
|  | 0111 | MAH | MA[31:16], multiplier accumulator higher 16-bits |
|  | 1000 | RP0 | RP0[15:0], RAM pointer register 0 |
|  | 1001 | RP1 | RP0[15:0], RAM pointer register 1 |
|  | 1010 | RP2 | RP0[15:0], RAM pointer register 2 |
|  | 1011 | RPD | RAM pointer for short direct addressing |
|  | 1100 | MC0 | Modulo control register 0 for RP0/RP1 |
|  | 1101 | MC1 | Modulo control register 1 for RP2 |
|  | 1110 | MSR0 | MAC816 status register 0 |
|  | 1111 | MSR1 | MAC816 status register 1 |
| Ai | 0 | A | A[15:0], AU result register A |
|  | 1 | B | $B[15: 0]$, AU result register B |
| Am | 00 | A | A[15:0], AU result register A |
|  | 01 | B | B[15:0], AU result register B |
|  | 10 | AC | A[15:0], AU result register A with Carry |
|  | 11 | BC | B[15:0], AU result register B with Carry |
| MAm | 00 | A | A[15:0], AU result register A |
|  | 01 | B | B [15:0], AU result register B |
|  | 10 | MAL | MA[15:0], multiplier accumulator lower 16-bits |
|  | 11 | MAH | MA[31:16], multiplier accumulator higher 16-bits |

Table 21-5. MAC816 Registers (Continued)

| Notation | Operand Code | Mnemonic | Descriptions |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Mreg2 <br> Mreg2s <br> Mreg2d | 000-011 | - | Reserved |
|  | 100 | Y | Y [15:0], multiplier Y input register |
|  | 101 | X | X[15:0], multiplier X input register |
|  | 110 | MAL | MA[15:0], multiplier accumulator lower 16-bits |
|  | 111 | MAH | MA[31:16], multiplier accumulator higher 16-bits |
| Mreg1 | 00 | RP0 | RP0[15:0], RAM pointer register 0 |
|  | 01 | RP1 | RP0[15:0], RAM pointer register 1 |
|  | 10 | RP2 | RP0[15:0], RAM pointer register 2 |
|  | 11 | RPD | RAM pointer for short direct addressing |
| Mreg3 | 00 | MC0 | Modulo control register 0 for RP0/RP1 |
|  | 01 | MC1 | Modulo control register 1 for RP2 |
|  | 10 | MSR0 | MAC816 status register 0 |
|  | 11 | MSR1 | MAC816 status register 1 |

Table 21-6. Data Transfer Registers

| Notation | Register Address | Descriptions |
| :--- | :---: | :--- |
| Creg | 00 | A[7:0], AU result register A lower 8-bits |
|  | 01 | A[15:8], AU result register A higher 8-bits |
|  | 10 | B[7:0], AU result register B lower 8-bits |
|  | 11 | B[15:8], AU result register B higher 8-bits |

BMMSUNH

Table 21-7. Memory Access Mode Information

| Notation | Operand Code | Mnemonic | Descriptions |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| @rpm | 0000 | @rp0+ | Content of memory location specified by RP0, RPO post-increment by 1 with modulo mode |
|  | 0001 | @rpo- | Content of memory location specified by RPO, RP0 post-decrement by 1 with modulo mode |
|  | 0010 | @rp0s | Content of memory location specified by RPO, RPO post-modification by +2 or -2 with modulo mode |
|  | 0011 | @rp0 | Content of memory location specified by RP0 |
|  | 0100 | @rp1+ | Content of memory location specified by RP1, RP1 post-increment by 1 with modulo mode |
|  | 0101 | @rp1- | Content of memory location specified by RP1, RP1 post-decrement by 1 with modulo mode |
|  | 0110 | @rp1s | Content of memory location specified by RP1, RP1 post-modification by +2 or -2 with modulo mode |
|  | 0111 | @rp1 | Content of memory location specified by RP1 |
|  | 1000 | @rp2+ | Content of memory location specified by RP2, RP2 post-increment by 1 with modulo mode |
|  | 1001 | @rp2- | Content of memory location specified by RP2, RP2 post-decrement by 1 with modulo mode |
|  | 1010 | @rp2s | Content of memory location specified by RP2, RP2 post-modification by +2 or -2 with modulo mode |
|  | 1011 | @rp2 | Content of memory location specified by RP2 |
|  | 1100-1111 | - | Reserved |
| @rpOm | 00 | @rp0+ | Content of memory location specified by RPO, RPO post-increment by 1 with modulo mode |
|  | 01 | @rpo- | Content of memory location specified by RPO, RP0 post-decrement by 1 with modulo mode |
|  | 10 | @rp0s | Content of memory location specified by RPO, RPO post-modification by +2 or -2 with modulo mode |
|  | 11 | @rp0 | Content of memory location specified by RP0 |
| @rp2m | 00 | @rp2+ | Content of memory location specified by RP2, RP2 post-increment by 1 with modulo mode |
|  | 01 | @rp2- | Content of memory location specified by RP2, RP2 post-decrement by 1 with modulo mode |
|  | 10 | @rp2s | Content of memory location specified by RP2, RP2 post-modification by +2 or -2 with modulo mode |
|  | 11 | @rp2 | Content of memory location specified by RP2 |

## SAMSUNF

Table 21-8. Condition Code Information

| Notation | Operand Code | Mnemonic | Descriptions |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| cc | 0000 | Z | Z = 1 |
|  | 0001 | NZ | $\mathrm{Z}=0$ |
|  | 0010 | C | $C=1$ |
|  | 0011 | NC | $C=0$ |
|  | 0100 | NEG | $\mathrm{N}=1$ |
|  | 0101 | POS | $\mathrm{N}=0$ |
|  | 0110 | V1 | $V=1$ |
|  | 0111 | V0 | $V=0$ |
|  | 1000 | - | Reserved |
|  | 1001 | GT | $\mathrm{N}=0$ and $\mathrm{Z}=0$ |
|  | 1010 | LE | $\mathrm{N}=1$ and $\mathrm{Z}=1$ |
|  | 1011 | MV1 | MV = 1 |
|  | 1100 | MV0 | $M V=0$ |
|  | 1101-1111 | - | Reserved |

Table 21-9. Control Bit Code Information

| Notation | Operand Code | Mnemonic | Descriptions |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :--- |
| bs | 000 | OPM | MSR1[1] |
|  | 001 | PSH1 | MSR1[0] |
|  | 010 | ME0 | RP0[15], RP0 modulo mode enable |
|  | 011 | ME1 | RP1[15], RP1 modulo mode enable |
|  | 100 | M816 | MSR1[2] |
|  | 101 | ME2 | RP2[15], RP2 modulo mode enable |
|  | 110 | OPA | MSR0[5] |
|  | 111 | OPB | MSR0[6] |
|  |  |  |  |

SAMSUNH

Table 21-10. AU operation code information

| Notation | Operand Code | Mnemonic | Descriptions |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| EMODO | 00 | ELD/ELDT | Load |
|  | 01 | EADD/EADDT | Addition |
|  | 10 | ESUB/ESUBT | Subtraction |
|  | 11 | ECP/ECPT | Comparison |
| EMOD1 | 0000 | ERR/ERRT | Rotate right |
|  | 0001 | ERL/ERLT | Rotate left |
|  | 0010 | ESR/ESRT | Arithmetic shift right |
|  | 0011 | ESL/ESLT | Arithmetic shift left |
|  | 0100 | EINC/EINCT | Increment |
|  | 0101 | EDEC/EDECT | Decrement |
|  | 0110 | ENEG/ENEGT | Negation |
|  | 0111 | ECR/ECRT | Clear |
|  | 1000 | ENORM/ENORMT | Normalization |
|  | 1001 | EABS/EABST | Absolution |
|  | 1010-1111 | - | reserved |

Table 21-11. Others

| Notation | Operand Code | Mnemonic | Descriptions |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| sXsY | 00 | uu | Unsigned by unsigned multiplication |
|  | 01 | us | Unsigned by signed multiplication |
|  | 10 | su | Signed by unsigned multiplication |
|  | 11 | none | Signed by signed multiplication |
| rs | 0 | ER | Reset |
|  | 1 | ES | Set |
| ts | 0 | $\begin{gathered} \text { ELD/ } \\ \text { EMOD1/ } \\ \text { EMOD0 } \end{gathered}$ | Execute mnemonic always |
|  | 1 | $\begin{gathered} \text { ELDT/ } \\ \text { EMOD1T/ } \\ \text { EMOD0T } \end{gathered}$ | Execute mnemonic when test result flag (MSR0[4] or T) is set. <br> If $T=0$, act as nop. |

## INSTRUCTION ENCODING

Table 21-12. Instruction Encoding


Table 21-12. Instruction Encoding (Continued)


NOTE: "X" means not applicable.

## QUICK REFERENCE

Table 21-13. Quick Reference

| Operation | Operand1 | Operand2 | Function | Flag |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ELD <br> EADD <br> ESUB <br> ECP | A | \#imm:5 | $\mathrm{op} 1 \leftarrow \mathrm{op} 2$ <br> $\mathrm{op} 1 \leftarrow \mathrm{op} 1+\mathrm{op} 2$ <br> $\mathrm{op} 1 \leftarrow \mathrm{op} 1-\mathrm{op} 2$ <br> op1-op2 | $\begin{gathered} - \\ \mathrm{c} . \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n} \\ \mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n} \\ \mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n} \end{gathered}$ |
| ELD | RPDN | \#imm:4 | RPD[7:4] $\leftarrow \mathrm{op} 2$ |  |
| ELD | Adr:6 | Am/MAm | op1 $\leftarrow$ op2 |  |
| ELD | Am/MAm | Adr:6 | op1 $\leftarrow$ op2 |  |
| EADD ESUB ECP | Am | Adr:6 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { op1 } 1 \leftarrow \text { op1 + op2 } \\ & \text { op1 } \leftarrow \text { op1 - op2 } \\ & \text { op1 - op2 } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{aligned} & c . z, v, n \\ & c, z, v, n \\ & c, z, v, n \end{aligned}$ |
| ELD | Mreg1 | Adr:4 | op1 $\leftarrow$ op2 | - |
| ELD | Adr:4 | Mreg1 | op1 $\leftarrow \mathrm{op} 2$ | - |
| ELD | Am | Mreg | op1 $\leftarrow \mathrm{op} 2$ | - |
| ELD | mreg | Am | op1 $\leftarrow$ op2 | - |
| ELD | Mreg2d | Mreg2s | op1 $\leftarrow$ op2 | - |
| ELD | Mreg2 | @rpm | op1 $\leftarrow$ op2 | - |
| ELD | @rpm | Mreg2 | op1 $\leftarrow$ op2 | - |
| ELD <br> EADD <br> ESUB <br> ECP <br> ELDT <br> EADDT <br> ESUBT <br> ECPT | Am | MAm | $\begin{aligned} & \text { op1 } \leftarrow \text { op2 } \\ & \text { op1 } \leftarrow \text { op1 }+ \text { op2 } \\ & \text { op1 } \leftarrow \mathrm{op} 1-\mathrm{op} 2 \\ & \text { op1 }- \text { op2 } \\ & \text { If } \mathrm{T}=1 \text {, same as ELD } \\ & \text { If } \mathrm{T}=1 \text {, same as EADD } \\ & \text { If } \mathrm{T}=1 \text {, same as ESUB } \\ & \text { If } \mathrm{T}=1 \text {, same as ECP } \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} - \\ \mathrm{c} . \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n} \\ \mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n} \\ \mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n} \\ - \\ \mathrm{c} . \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n} \\ \mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n} \\ \mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n} \end{gathered}$ |
| ELD ELDT | @rpm | Am | $\mathrm{op} 1 \leftarrow \mathrm{op} 2$ <br> If $T=1$, same as ELD | - |
| ELD <br> EADD <br> ESUB <br> ECP <br> ELDT <br> EADDT <br> ESUBT <br> ECPT | Am | @rpm | op1 $\leftarrow$ op2 <br> $\mathrm{op} 1 \leftarrow \mathrm{op} 1+\mathrm{op} 2$ <br> $\mathrm{op} 1 \leftarrow \mathrm{op} 1-\mathrm{op} 2$ <br> op1-op2 <br> If $T=1$, same as ELD <br> If $\mathrm{T}=1$, same as EADD <br> If $T=1$, same as ESUB <br> If $T=1$, same as ECP | $\begin{gathered} - \\ \mathrm{c} . \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n} \\ \mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n} \\ \mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n} \\ - \\ \mathrm{c} . \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n} \\ \mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n} \\ \mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n} \end{gathered}$ |

B^MSUNH

Table 21-13. Quick Reference (Continued)

| Operation | Operand1 | Operand2 | Function | Flag |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ETST | cc | - | MSRO[4] $\leftarrow$ cc (condition check) | - |
| ELD | mreg | \#imm:16 | op1 $\leftarrow$ op2 | - |
| ELD <br> EADD <br> ESUB <br> ECP | A | \#imm:16 | $\begin{aligned} & \text { op1 } \leftarrow \text { op2 } \\ & \text { op1 } \leftarrow \text { op1 }+ \text { op2 } \\ & \text { op1 } \leftarrow \text { op1 }- \text { op2 } \\ & \text { op1 -op2 } \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | $\begin{gathered} - \\ \mathrm{c} . \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n} \\ \mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n} \\ \mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n} \end{gathered}$ |
| ERPM | rpm | - | $\mathrm{RP} \leftarrow$ modified RP | - |
| ER | bs | - | op1 $\leftarrow 0$ | - |
| ES | bs | - | $\mathrm{op} 1 \leftarrow 10$ | - |
| ESECO ESEC1 ESEC2 | MSR1 | \#imm:4 | MSR1[7:4] $\leftarrow \operatorname{imm}[3: 0]$ MSR1[11:8] $\leftarrow$ imm[3:0] MSR1[15:12] $\leftarrow$ imm[3:0] | - |
| ERR <br> ERRT | Am | - | ```when Am!=AC/BC, op }\leftarrow{op1}>>1, op1[15] \leftarrowop1[0] c}\leftarrow\textrm{op1[0] when Am=AC/BC, op1\leftarrow{c:op1}>>1, c \leftarrow op1[0] when t=1, same as ERR``` | $\mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n}$ <br> $\mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n}$ |
| ERL <br> ERLT | Am | - | when $A m!=A C / B C$, op $\leftarrow\{o p 1\} \ll 1$, op $1[0] \leftarrow o p[15]$, $\mathrm{c} \leftarrow \mathrm{op}[15]$, when $\mathrm{Am}=\mathrm{AC} / \mathrm{BC}$, op $1 \leftarrow\{\mathrm{op} 1: \mathrm{c}\} \ll 1, \mathrm{c} \leftarrow \mathrm{op}[15]$ when $t=1$, same as ERL | $\mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n}$ <br> $\mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n}$ |
| ESR <br> ESRT | Am | - | when $A m!=A C / B C$, op $\leftarrow\{o p 1\} \gg 1, c \leftarrow$ op1[0] when $A m=A C / B C$, op1 $\leftarrow\{c: o p 1\} \gg 1, c \leftarrow$ op1[0] when $t=1$, same as ESR | $\mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n}$ <br> $\mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n}$ |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { ESL } \\ & \text { ESLT } \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | Am | - | when Am!=AC/BC, op $1 \leftarrow\{$ op 1$\} \ll 1$, op $1[0] \leftarrow 0$, c $\leftarrow$ op[15], when $A m=A C / B C$, op1 $\leftarrow\{o p 1: c\} \ll 1, c \leftarrow o p[15]$ when $t=1$, same as ESL | $\mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n}$ <br> $\mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n}$ |
| EINC <br> EINCT | Am | - | when Am!=AC/BC, op $1 \leftarrow$ op $1+1$ when $A m=A C / B C$, op $1 \leftarrow \mathrm{op} 1+c$ when $t=1$, same as EINC | $\mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n}$ <br> $\mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n}$ |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { EDEC } \\ & \text { EDECT } \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | Am | - | when Am!=AC/BC, op1 $\leftarrow$ op1+ffffh when $\mathrm{Am}=\mathrm{AC} / \mathrm{BC}$, op1 $\leftarrow$ op1+ffffh+c when $t=1$, same as EDEC | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n} \\ & \mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n} \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ |
|  | Am | - | when $\mathrm{Am}!=A C / B C$, op $1 \leftarrow \sim$ op $1+1$ when $A m=A C / B C$, op1 $\leftarrow \sim$ op1 $+c$ when $t=1$, same as ENEG | $\mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n}$ <br> $\mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n}$ |
|  | Am | - | when $A m!=A C / B C$, if op[15]=1, op $1 \leftarrow \sim$ op1 +1 when $A m=A C / B C$, op $[15]=1$, op $1 \leftarrow \sim o p 1+c$ when $t=1$, same as EABS | $\mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n}$ <br> $\mathrm{c}, \mathrm{z}, \mathrm{v}, \mathrm{n}$ |
| ENORM <br> ENORMT | Am | - | when $A m!=A C / B C$, if op1[15]^op1[14]=0, $\mathrm{op} 1 \leftarrow\{\mathrm{op} 1\} \ll 1$, op1 $[0] \leftarrow 0, \mathrm{RP} 0 \leftarrow \mathrm{RP} 0+1$ when $\mathrm{Am}=\mathrm{AC} / \mathrm{BC}$, if op1[15]^op1[14]=0, $\mathrm{op} 1 \leftarrow\{\mathrm{op} 1: \mathrm{c}\} \ll 1, \mathrm{RP} 0 \leftarrow \mathrm{RP} 0+1$ <br> when $t=1$, same as ENORMT | $\begin{aligned} & c, z, v, n \\ & c, z, v, n \end{aligned}$ |
| ECR <br> ECRT | Am | - | op1 $\leftarrow 0$ <br> when $t=1$, same as ECR | - |

## BNMSUN

Table 21-13. Quick Reference (Concluded)

| Operation | Operand1 | Operand2 | Operand3 | Function | Flag |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ESR | MA | - | - | op1 $\leftarrow$ op1>>1 | - |
| ESL | MA | - | - | op1 $\leftarrow$ op1<<1 | MV |
| ERND | MA | - | - | MA[31:16] $\leftarrow$ MA[31:16] + MA[15] | MV |
| EMAD | MA | @rp0m | @rp2m | $\begin{aligned} & \text { X-reg } \leftarrow \text { @rp0m, Y-reg } \leftarrow \text { @rp2m } \\ & \mathrm{MA} \leftarrow M A+\mathrm{X}^{*} \mathrm{Y} \end{aligned}$ | MV |
| EMSB | MA | @rp0m | @rp2m | $\begin{aligned} & \text { X-reg } \leftarrow @ r p 0 m, \text { Y-reg } \leftarrow \text { @rp2m }, \\ & M A \leftarrow M A-X^{*} Y \end{aligned}$ | MV |
| EMUL | MA | @rp0m | @rp2m | $\begin{aligned} & \text { X-reg } \leftarrow \text { @rp0m, Y-reg } \leftarrow \text { @rp2m }, \\ & M A \leftarrow\left(X^{*} Y\right) \end{aligned}$ | - |
| EMAD | MA | Ai | @rp2m | $\begin{aligned} & \text { X-reg } \leftarrow \text { op2, Y-reg } \leftarrow @ r p 2 m \\ & M A \leftarrow M A+X^{*} Y \end{aligned}$ | MV |
| EMSB | MA | Ai | @rp2m | $\begin{aligned} & \text { X-reg } \leftarrow \text { op2, Y-reg } \leftarrow \text { @rp2m } \\ & M A \leftarrow M A-X^{*} Y \end{aligned}$ | MV |
| EMUL | MA | Ai | @rp2m | $\begin{aligned} & \text { X-reg } \leftarrow \text { op2, Y-reg } \leftarrow @ r p 2 m \\ & M A \leftarrow\left(X^{*} Y\right) \end{aligned}$ | - |
| EMAD | MA | X | @rp2m | $\begin{aligned} & \text { Y-reg } \leftarrow \text { @rp2m }, \\ & M A \leftarrow M A+X^{*} Y \end{aligned}$ | MV |
| EMSB | MA | X | @rp2m | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{Y} \text {-reg } \leftarrow \text { @rp2m }, \\ & \mathrm{MA} \leftarrow \mathrm{MA}-\mathrm{X}^{*} \mathrm{Y} \end{aligned}$ | MV |
| EMUL | MA | X | @rp2m | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{Y} \text {-reg } \leftarrow @ r p 2 \mathrm{~m}, \\ & \mathrm{MA} \leftarrow\left(\mathrm{X}^{\star} \mathrm{Y}\right) \\ & \hline \end{aligned}$ | - |
| EMAD | MA | @rp0m | Y | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{X} \text {-reg } \leftarrow @ r p 0 \mathrm{~m}, \\ & \mathrm{MA} \leftarrow \mathrm{MA}+\mathrm{X}^{*} \mathrm{Y} \end{aligned}$ | MV |
| EMSB | MA | @rp0m | Y | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{X} \text {-reg } \leftarrow @ r p 0 \mathrm{~m} \\ & \mathrm{MA} \leftarrow \mathrm{MA}-\mathrm{X}^{*} \mathrm{Y} \end{aligned}$ | MV |
| EMUL | MA | @rp0m | Y | X-reg $\leftarrow$ @rpOm, $\mathrm{MA} \leftarrow\left(\mathrm{X}^{\star} \mathrm{Y}\right)$ | - |
| EMAD | MA | X | Y | $M A \leftarrow M A+X^{*} Y$ | MV |
| EMSB | MA | X | Y | $M A \leftarrow M A-X^{*} Y$ | MV |
| EMUL | MA | X | Y | $\mathrm{MA} \leftarrow\left(\mathrm{X}^{\star} \mathrm{Y}\right)$ | - |

## MAC816 INSTRUCTION DESCRIPTION

## EABS - Absolute

Format: EABS <op>
<op>: Am
Operation: If the MSB of <op> is $1,<o p>\leftarrow \sim<o p>+1$ when <op> is A or B.
If the MSB of <op> is $1,<o p>\leftarrow \sim<o p>+C$ when <op> is AC or BC. EABS adds the values 0 and the 2's complement of <op>.

Flags: $\quad$ C: set if the borrow of result is zero. Reset if not.
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
V: set if overflow is generated. Reset if not.
$\mathbf{N}$ : exclusive OR of V and MSB of result.

## EABST - Absolute conditional

## Format: EABST <op> <op>: Am

Operation: If $T=1$, then same as EABS, else no operation
Flags: If $T=1$, then same as EABS, else no operation

## EADD - Add

Format: EADD <op1>, <op2>
<op1>: Am: A, B, AC, BC
<op2>: adr:6, @rpm, Ai, Mreg, \#imm:16, \#imm:5
Operation: $\quad<o p 1>\leftarrow<o p 1+<o p 2>$ when <op1> is A or B. <op1> $\leftarrow<$ op1 + <op2> + C when <op1> is AC or BC.
EADD adds the values in <op1> and <op2> and stores the result in <op1>.
Flags: $\quad$ C: set if the carry of result is 1 . Reset if not.
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
V: set if overflow is generated. Reset if not.
N : exclusive OR of V and MSB of result.

NOTE: If <op1> is B, <op2> can not be \#imm:5.

## EADDT - Add conditional

Format: $\quad$| EADDT <op1>, <op2> |  |
| :--- | :--- |
|  | <op1>: Am: A, B, AC, BC |
|  | <op2>: @rpm, Ai, MAH,MAL |

Operation: If $T=1$, then same as EADD, else no operation
Flags: If $T=1$, then same as EADD, else no operation

## ECP - Compare

Format: ECP <op1>, <op2>
<op1>: Am
<op2>: adr:6, @rpm, Ai, Mreg, \#imm:16, \#imm:5
Operation: <op1> + ~<op2> +1 when <op1> is A or B.
<op1> + ~<op2> +C when <op1> is AC or BC.
ECP compares the values of <op1> and <op2> by subtracting <op2> from <op1>.
Contents of <op1> and <op2> are not changed.
Flags: $\quad$ C: set if the borrow of result is zero. Reset if not.
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
V: set if overflow is generated. Reset if not.
N : exclusive OR of V and MSB of result.

NOTE: If <op1> is B, <op2> can not be \#imm:5.

## ECPT - Compare conditional

Format: $\quad$| ECPT <op1>, <op2> |  |
| :--- | :--- |
|  | <op1>: Am: A, B, AC, BC |
|  | <op2>: @rpm, Ai, MAH,MAL |

Operation: If $T=1$, then same as ECP, else no operation
Flags: If $T=1$, then same as ECP, else no operation

## ECR - Clear

```
Format: ECRT <op>
    <op>: Ai,MV
Operation: <op>\leftarrow0
        ECRT clears Ai or MV.
```


## ECRT - Clear

```
Format: ECRT <op>
    <op>: Ai
Operation: If T=1,<op> \leftarrow0
    ECRT clears Ai when T=1.
```


## EDEC - Decrement

Format: EDEC <op>
<op>: Am
Operation: $\quad<o p>\leftarrow<o p>+0 x f f f$ when <op> is A or B. <op> $\leftarrow$ <op> $+0 x f f f+$ C when <op> is AC or BC. EDEC decrements the value in <op>.

Flags: $\quad$ C: set if carry is generated. Reset if not.
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
V: set if overflow is generated. Reset if not.
N : exclusive OR of V and MSB of result.

## EDECT - Decrement conditional

| Format: | EDECT <op> <br> <op>: Am |
| :--- | :--- |
| Operation: | If $\mathrm{T}=1$, then same as EDEC, else no operation |
| Flags: | If $\mathrm{T}=1$, then same as EDEC, else no operation |

## EINC - Increment

Format: EINC <op>
<op>: Am
Operation: $\quad<o p>\leftarrow<o p>+1$ when <op> is A or B. <op> $\leftarrow<o p>+C$ when <op> is $A C$ or $B C$.
EINC increments the value in <op>.
Flags: $\quad$ C: set if carry is generated. Reset if not.
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
V: set if overflow is generated. Reset if not.
N : exclusive OR of V and MSB of result.

## EINCT - Increment conditional

Format: $\quad$| EINCT <op> |
| :--- |
|  |
|  |
| <op>: Am |

Operation: If $T=1$, then same as EINC, else no operation
Flags: If $T=1$, then same as EINC, else no operation

## ELD Adr - Load Adr

Format: ELD <op1>, <op2> <op1>,<op2>: adr:6, MAi / adr:4,Mreg1

Operation: $\quad<$ op1> $\leftarrow<$ op2>
ELD Adr loads a value specified by <op2> into the memory location determined by <op1>

## ELD Ai- Load Ai

Format: ELD <op1>, <op2> <op1>: Ai: A, B <op2>: adr:6, @rpm, Ai, Mreg, \#imm:5, \#imm:16

Operation: $\quad \mathrm{Ai} \leftarrow<$ op2>
ELD Ai loads a value specified by <op2> into the register designated by Ai .
NOTE: If <op1> is B, <op2> can not be \#imm:5.

## ELD Mreg - Load Mreg

Format: ELD <op1>, <op2> <op1>: Mreg <op2>: Ai

Operation: $\quad \mathrm{Mreg} \leftarrow \mathrm{Ai}$
ELD Mreg loads a value specified by <op2> into the register designated by Mreg.

## ELD Mreg1 - Load Mreg1

Format: ELD <op1>, <op2> <op1>: Mreg1: RP0, RP1, RP2, RPD <op2>: adr:4

Operation: $\quad$ Mreg1 $\leftarrow$ adr:4
ELD Mreg1 loads the content of memory location determined by adr:4 into the register designated by Mreg1.

## ELD Mreg2 - Load Mreg2

Format: ELD <op1>, <op2> <op1>: Mreg2: X, Y, MAH, MAL <op2>: @rpm

Operation: $\quad$ Mreg $2 \leftarrow$ @rpm, rpi $\leftarrow$ post-modified rpi ELD Mreg2 loads the content of memory location determined by @rpm into the register designated by Mreg2.

## ELD Mreg3 - Load Mreg3

Format: ELD <op1>, <op2> <op1>: Mreg3: MC0, MC1, MSR0, MSR1 <op2>: @rpm

Operation: $\quad$ Mreg3 $\leftarrow$ @rpm
ELD Mreg3 loads the content of memory location determined by @rpm into the register designated by Mreg3.

## ELD @rpm — Load into memory indexed

Format: ELD <op1>, <op2> <op1>: @rpm
<op2>: Ai, Mreg2, Mreg3
Operation: @rpm $\leftarrow<$ op2>, rpi $\leftarrow$ post-modified rpi
ELD @rpm loads the value of <op2> into the memory location determined by @rpm.

## EMAD - Multiplication and Addition

Format: $\quad \begin{aligned} & \text { EMAD <op1>, <op2>,sXsY } \\ & <o p 1>,<o p 2>: ~ @ r p 0 m, @ r p 2 m ~ / ~ A i, @ r p 2 m ~ / ~ X, @ r p 2 m ~ / ~ @ r p 0 m, Y ~ / ~ X, Y ~\end{aligned}$
Operation: $\quad \mathrm{X} \leftarrow<$ op1>, $\mathrm{Y} \leftarrow<$ op2>, $\mathrm{MA} \leftarrow \mathrm{MA}+\{\text { sign }, \mathrm{X}\}^{*}\{$ sign, Y$\}$ EMAD multiplies the values in <op1> and <op2> and adds the result in MA.

Flags: MV: Set if the arithmetic overflow occurs in MA after this instruction.

## EMSB - Multiplication and Subtraction

Format: EMSB <op1>, <op2>,sXsY <op1>,<op2>: @rp0m,@rp2m / Ai,@rp2m / X,@rp2m / @rp0m, Y / X,Y

Operation: $\quad \mathrm{X} \leftarrow<$ op1>, $\mathrm{Y} \leftarrow<$ op2>, $\mathrm{MA} \leftarrow \mathrm{MA}-\{\text { sign }, \mathrm{X}\}^{*}\{$ sign, Y$\}$ EMAD multiplies the values in <op1> and <op2> together and subtracts the result in MA.

Flags: MV: Set if the arithmetic overflow occurs in MA after this instruction.

## EMUL - Multiply

Format: EMUL <op1>, <op2>,sXsY <op1>,<op2>: @rp0m,@rp2m / Ai,@rp2m / X,@rp2m / @rp0m, Y / X,Y

Operation: $\quad \mathrm{X} \leftarrow<$ op1>, $\mathrm{Y} \leftarrow<$ op2>, $\mathrm{MA} \leftarrow\{\text { sign, } \mathrm{X}\}^{*}\{$ sign, Y$\}$
EMUL multiplies the values in <op1> and <op2> and stores the result in MA.

## ENEG - Negate

Format: ENEG <op>
<op>: Am
Operation: $\quad<o p>\leftarrow \sim<o p>+1$ when <op> is A or B. <op> $\leftarrow \sim$ <op> +C when <op> is AC or BC.
ESUB adds the values 0 and the 2's complement of <op> to to negate <op>.
Flags: $\quad \mathbf{C}:$ set if the borrow of result is zero. Reset if not.
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
V: set if overflow is generated. Reset if not.
N : exclusive OR of V and MSB of result.

## ENEGT - Negate conditional

Format: | ENEGT <op> |
| :--- |
| <op>: Am |

Operation: If $\mathrm{T}=1$, then same as ENEG, else no operation
Flags: If $T=1$, then same as ENEG, else no operation

ENOP - No operation
Format: ENOP
Operation: No operation
Flags: No operation

## ENORM - Normalization step

Format: ENORM <op>
<op>: Am
Operation: If $<o p>[15]==<o p>[14],<o p>\leftarrow<o p>\ll 1, R P 0 \leftarrow R P 0+1$ when $<o p>$ is A or B.
If $<\mathrm{op}>[15]==<\mathrm{op}\rangle[14]$, <op $>\leftarrow\{<o p>, C\} \ll 1, \mathrm{RP} 0 \leftarrow \mathrm{RP} 0+1$ when $<o p>$ is $A C$ or $B C$.
Flags:
C: <op>[15] ^ <op>[14]
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not
V: reset to zero.
$\mathbf{N}$ : set if the MSB of result is 1 . Reset if not

ENORMT - Normalization step conditional
Format: ENORMT <op> <op>: Am

Operation: If $\mathrm{T}=1$, then same as ENORM, else no operation
Flags: If $T=1$, then same as ENORM, else no operation

## ER - Bit Reset

| Format: | ER bs |
| :--- | :--- |
| Operation: | bs $\leftarrow 0$ |
|  | ES resets the specified bit. |

## ERL - Rotate Left

Format: ERL <op>
<op>: Am
Operation: $\quad<o p>\leftarrow\{<o p>[14: 0],<o p>[15]\}, C \leftarrow<o p>[15]$ when $A m$ is $A$ or $B$. <op> $\leftarrow\{<o p>[14: 0], C\}, C \leftarrow<o p>[15]$ when Am is $A C$ or $B C$.
ERL rotates the value of <op> to the left and stores the result back into <op>. The original MSB of <op> is copied into carry (C).

Flags: $\quad$ C: set if the MSB of <op> (before shifting) is 1 . Reset if not
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not
V: reset to zero.
$\mathbf{N}$ : set if the MSB of result is 1 . Reset if not

## ERLT - Rotate Left conditional

| Format: | ERLT <op> <br> <op>: Am |
| :--- | :--- |
| Operation: | If $\mathrm{T}=1$, then same as ERL, else no operation |
| Flags: | If $\mathrm{T}=1$, then same as ERL, else no operation |

## ERND - Round off

Format: ERND MA
Operation: $\quad \mathrm{MA}[31: 16] \leftarrow \mathrm{MA}[31: 16]+\mathrm{MA}[15], \mathrm{MA}[15: 0] \leftarrow 0$
ERND adds $0 \times 8000$ to the lower 16-bit position of MA and stores the result in MA.
Flags: MV: set if overflow is generated. Reset if not

## ERPM - Modify Ram pointer

```
Format: ERPM rpm
Operation: }\quad\mathrm{ rpi }\leftarrow\mathrm{ modified rpi
    ERPM modifies a rpi by rpm.
NOTE: It does not generate a cycle of RAM access.
```


## ERR - Rotate Right

Format: $\quad$ ERR <op>
<op>: Am
Operation: $\quad<o p>\leftarrow\{<o p>[0],<o p>[15: 1]\}, C \leftarrow<o p>[0]$ when $A m$ is $A$ or $B$. <op> $\leftarrow\{C,<o p>[15: 1]\}, C \leftarrow<o p>[0]$ when Am is $A C$ or $B C$.
$R R$ rotates the value of <op> to the right and stores the result back into <op>. The original LSB of <op> is copied into carry (C).

Flags: $\quad$ C: set if the LSB of <op>(before shifting) is 1 . Reset if not
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not
V: reset to zero.
$\mathbf{N}$ : set if the MSB of result is 1 . Reset if not

## ERRT - Rotate Right conditional

| Format: | ERRT <op> <br> <op>: Am |
| :--- | :--- |
| Operation: | If T=1, then same as ERR, else no operation |
| Flags: | If $T=1$, then same as ERR, else no operation |

## ES - Bit Set

## Format: ES bs

Operation: $\quad \mathrm{bs} \leftarrow 1$
ES sets the specified bit.

## ESECO / ESEC1 / ESEC2 - Set SECi

Format: ESEC0 \#imm:4 ESEC1 \#imm:4 ESEC2 \#imm:4<br>Operation: ESEC0: SEC0[3:0] $\leftarrow$ \#imm:4 ESEC1: SEC1[3:0] $\leftarrow$ \#imm:4 ESEC2: SEC2[3:0] $\leftarrow \#$ \#mm:4

## ESL — Shift Left

Format: ESL <op>
<op>:Am
Operation: $\quad<o p>\leftarrow\{<o p>[14: 0], 0\}, C \leftarrow<o p>[15]$ when $<o p>$ is $A$ or $B$. <op> $\leftarrow\{<o p>[14: 0], C\}, C \leftarrow<o p>[15]$ when <op> is $A C$ or BC.
ESL shifts to the left by 1 bit. The MSB of the original <op> is copied into carry(C).
Flags: $\quad$ C: set if the MSB of $\langle o p>$ (before shifting) is 1 . Reset if not
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not
V: set if overflow is generated. Reset if not.
N : exclusive OR of V and MSB of result.

## ESLT - Shift Left conditional

| Format: | ESLT <op> <br> <op>: Am |
| :--- | :--- |
| Operation: | If T=1, then same as ESL, else no operation |
| Flags: | If T=1, then same as ESL, else no operation |

## ESR - Shift Right

Format: $\quad$ ESR <op> <op>:Am

Operation: $\quad<o p>\leftarrow\{<o p>[15],<o p>[15: 1]\}, C \leftarrow<o p>[0]$ when $<o p>$ is $A$ or $B$. <op> $\leftarrow\{C,<o p>[15: 1]\}$, $C \leftarrow<o p>[0]$ when <op> is $A C$ or BC.
ESR shifts to the right by 1 bit. The LSB of the original <op> is copied into carry(C).
Flags: $\quad$ C: set if the LSB of <op>(before shifting) is 1 . Reset if not
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not
V: set to zero
$\mathbf{N}$ : set if result is negative. Reset if not

## ESRT - Shift Right conditional

| Format: | ESRT <op> <br> <op>: Am |
| :--- | :--- |
| Operation: | If T=1, then same as ESR, else no operation |
| Flags: | If T=1, then same as ESR, else no operation |

## ESUB - Subtract

Format: ESUB <op1>, <op2>
<op1>: Am
<op2>: adr:6, @rpm, Ai, Mreg, \#imm:16, \#imm:5
Operation: $\quad<o p 1>\leftarrow<o p 1>+\sim<o p 2>+1$ when <op1> is A or B. <op1> $\leftarrow<o p 1>+\sim<o p 2>+C$ when <op1> is AC or BC.
ESUB adds the values in <op1> and the 2's complement of <op2>, to perform subtraction on <op1> and <op2>.

Flags: $\quad$ C: set if the borrow of result is zero. Reset if not.
Z: set if result is zero. Reset if not.
V: set if overflow is generated. Reset if not.
N : exclusive OR of V and MSB of result.

NOTE: If <op1> is B, <op2> can not be \#imm:5.

## ESUBT - Subtract conditional

Format: ESUBT <op1>, <op2> <op1>: Am <op2>: @rpm, Ai, MAH, MAL

Operation: If $T=1$, then same as ESUB, else no operation
Flags: If $T=1$, then same as ESUB, else no operation

## ETST - Test Condition

Format: ETST cc
cc: Z, NZ, C, NC, NEG, POS, V1, V0, GT, LE, MV1, MV0
Operation: $\quad \mathrm{T} \leftarrow$ test result ETST tests the specified condition of a flag.

Flags: $\quad \mathrm{T}:$ set if test result is true. Reset if not

## NOTES

## ELECTRICAL DATA

## OVERVIEW

Table 22-1. Absolute Maximum Ratings
$\left(\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{A}}=25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right)$

| Parameter | Symbol | Conditions | Rating | Unit |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Supply voltage | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}$ | - | -0.3 to +6.5 | V |
| Input voltage | $V_{1}$ | - | -0.3 to $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}+0.3$ | V |
| Output voltage | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{O}}$ | - | -0.3 to $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}+0.3$ | V |
| Output current high | $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{OH}}$ | One I/O pin active | -18 | mA |
|  |  | All I/O pins active | -60 |  |
| Output current low | ${ }_{\mathrm{OL}}$ | One I/O pin active | + 30 | mA |
|  |  | Total pin current for port | + 100 |  |
| Operating temperature | $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{A}}$ | - | -25 to +85 | ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |
| Storage temperature | $\mathrm{T}_{\text {STG }}$ | - | -65 to +150 | ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |

Table 22-2. D.C. Electrical Characteristics
$\left(\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{A}}=-25{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right.$ to $+85{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=2.2 \mathrm{~V}$ to 5.5 V$)$

| Parameter | Symbol | Conditions | Min | Typ | Max | Unit |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Operating voltage | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}$ | $\mathrm{fxx}=8.2 \mathrm{MHz}$ | 3.0 | - | 5.5 | V |
|  |  | $\mathrm{fxx}=4.1 \mathrm{MHz}$ | 2.2 | - | 5.5 |  |
| Input high voltage | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{H} 1}$ | All input pins except $\mathrm{V}_{\mathbb{H} 2}$ | 0.8 V DD | - | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}$ | V |
|  | $\mathrm{V}_{1+2}$ | $\mathrm{X}_{\mathbb{N}}, \mathrm{XT} \mathrm{IN}$ | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}-0.1$ |  |  |  |
| Input low voltage | $\mathrm{V}_{\text {IL1 }}$ | All input pins except $\mathrm{V}_{\text {IL2 }}$ | - | - | $0.2 \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{DD}}$ | V |
|  | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{IL} 2}$ | $\mathrm{X}_{\mathbb{N},}, \mathrm{XT}{ }_{\mathbb{N}}$ |  |  | 0.1 |  |

Table 22-2. D.C. Electrical Characteristics (Continued)
$\left(\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{A}}=-25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right.$ to $+85^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=2.2 \mathrm{~V}$ to 5.5 V )

| Parameter | Symbol | Conditions | Min | Typ | Max | Unit |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Output high voltage | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{OH} 1}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=5 \mathrm{~V} ; \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{OH}}=-1 \mathrm{~mA} \\ & \text { All output pins except } \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{OH} 2} \end{aligned}$ | $V_{D D^{-1}}{ }^{1.0}$ | - | - | V |
|  | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{OH} 2}$ | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=5 \mathrm{~V} ; \mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{OH}}=-15 \mathrm{~mA}$ <br> Port 5 | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}{ }^{-1.0}$ | - | - |  |
| Output low voltage | $\mathrm{V}_{\text {OL1 }}$ | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=4.5-5.5 \mathrm{~V} ; \mathrm{l}_{\mathrm{OL}}=15 \mathrm{~mA}$ | - | 0.4 | 2 | V |
| Input high leakage current | ${ }_{\text {LIH1 }}$ | $V_{\mathbb{I N}}=V_{D D}$ <br> All input pins except $\mathrm{ILH}_{\text {2 }}$ | - | - | 3 | $\mu \mathrm{A}$ |
|  | ${ }_{\text {LIH2 }}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{V}_{\mathbb{N}}=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}} \\ & \mathrm{X}_{\mathbb{N}}, \mathrm{XT}_{\mathbb{N}}, \mathrm{X}_{\text {OUT }}, \mathrm{XT} T_{\text {OUT }} \end{aligned}$ |  |  | 20 |  |
| Input low leakage current | $\mathrm{LIL}^{1}$ | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathbb{I N}}=0 \mathrm{~V}$ <br> All input pins except liLL2 | - | - | -3 |  |
|  | LIL2 | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{V}_{\mathbb{N}}=0 \mathrm{~V} \\ & \mathrm{X}_{\mathbb{N}}, \mathrm{XT}_{\mathbb{N}}, \mathrm{X}_{\text {OUT }}, \mathrm{XT}_{\text {OUT }}, \text { nRESET } \end{aligned}$ |  |  | -20 |  |
| Output high leakage current | ${ }_{\text {LOH }}$ | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{OUT}}=\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}$ <br> All I/O pins and Output pins | - | - | 3 |  |
| Output low leakage current | 'LOL | $\mathrm{V}_{\text {OUT }}=0 \mathrm{~V}$ <br> All I/O pins and Output pins | - | - | -3 |  |
| Pull-up resistor | $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{L} 1}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{V}_{\mathbb{I N}}=0 \mathrm{~V} ; \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=5 \mathrm{~V} \pm 10 \% \\ & \text { All port, } \mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{A}}=25^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \end{aligned}$ | 30 | 50 | 70 | k $\Omega$ |
|  | $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{L} 2}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{V}_{\mathbb{N}}=0 \mathrm{~V} ; \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=5 \mathrm{~V} \pm 10 \% \\ & \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{A}}=25^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \text {, nRESET only } \end{aligned}$ | 110 | 210 | 310 |  |

Table 22-2. D.C. Electrical Characteristics (Concluded)
$\left(\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{A}}=-25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right.$ to $+85^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=2.2 \mathrm{~V}$ to 5.5 V )

| Parameter | Symbol | Conditions | Min | Typ | Max | Unit |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\left\|\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}-\mathrm{COMi}\right\|$ <br> voltage drop (l=0-15) | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DC}}$ | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=2.7$ to 5.5 V <br> -15 uA per common pin LCNST $=00000000 \mathrm{~b}$ | - | - | 120 | mV |
| $\left\|\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}-\mathrm{SEGi}\right\|$ <br> voltage drop ( $\mathrm{I}=0-55$ ) | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DS}}$ | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=2.7$ to 5.5 V <br> -15 uA per segment pin LCNST $=00000000 \mathrm{~b}$ | - | - | 120 | mV |
| LCD voltage dividing resistor | $\mathrm{R}_{\text {LCD1 }}$ | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{LCD}}=2.7$ to 5.5 V ; LCON $3=0$ | 40 | 55 | 70 | k $\Omega$ |
|  | $\mathrm{R}_{\mathrm{LCD} 2}$ | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{LCD}}=2.7$ to 5.5 V ; LCON. $3=1$ | 20 | 28 | 35 |  |
| Total contrast resistor | $\mathrm{R}_{\text {CNST }}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{LCD}}=2.7 \text { to } 5.5 \mathrm{~V} ; \\ & \mathrm{LCNST}=10000000 \mathrm{~b} \end{aligned}$ | - | 140 | - |  |
| VLC Output voltage | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{LC} 1}$ | $\begin{aligned} & \mathrm{V} \text { LCD }=2.7 \text { to } 5.5 \mathrm{~V} \\ & \mathrm{LCD} \text { clock }=0 \mathrm{~Hz} \\ & \mathrm{LCNST}=00000000 \mathrm{~b} \end{aligned}$ | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}{ }^{-0.2}$ | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}$ | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}+0.2$ | V |
|  | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{LC} 2}$ |  | $0.8 \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{DD}}-0.2$ | $0.8 \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{DD}}$ | $0.8 \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{DD}}+0.2$ |  |
|  | $\mathrm{V}_{\text {LC3 }}$ |  | $0.6 \mathrm{~V}_{\text {DD }} 0.2$ | $0.6 \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{DD}}$ | $0.6 \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{DD}}+0.2$ |  |
|  | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{LC} 4}$ |  | $0.4 \mathrm{~V}_{\text {DD }} 0.2$ | $0.4 \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{DD}}$ | $0.4 \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{DD}+0.2}$ |  |
|  | $\mathrm{V}_{\text {LC5 }}$ |  | $0.2 \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{DD}}-0.2$ | $0.2 \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{DD}}$ | $0.2 \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{DD}}+0.2$ |  |
| Supply current ${ }^{(1)}$ | $\mathrm{I}_{\text {DD1 }}$ | Run mode; $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=5 \mathrm{~V} \pm 10 \%$ <br> 6 MHz crystal oscillator | - | 4 | 8 | mA |
|  |  | 4 MHz crystal oscillator |  | 2.7 | 5.4 |  |
|  |  | $V_{D D}=3 V \pm 10 \%$ <br> 6 MHz crystal oscillator | - | 2 | 4 | mA |
|  |  | 4 MHz crystal oscillator |  | 1.3 | 2.6 |  |
|  | $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{DD} 2}$ | Idle mode: $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=5 \mathrm{~V} \pm 10 \%$ 6 MHz crystal oscillator | - | 1.2 | 2.5 | mA |
|  |  | 4 MHz crystal oscillator |  | 1.0 | 2.0 |  |
|  |  | Idle mode: $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=3 \mathrm{~V} \pm 10 \%$ 6 MHz crystal oscillator |  | 0.5 | 1.5 | mA |
|  |  | 4 MHz crystal oscillator |  | 0.4 | 1.0 |  |
|  | $\mathrm{I}_{\text {D } 3}$ | Sub-run mode; $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=3 \mathrm{~V} \pm 10$ \% Main stop, 32 kHz sub-osc. | - | 17 | 34 | $\mu \mathrm{A}$ |
|  | $\mathrm{I}_{\text {D } 4}$ | Sub-idle mode; $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=3 \mathrm{~V} \pm 10 \%$ Main stop, 32 kHz | - | 4.8 | 10 | $\mu \mathrm{A}$ |
|  | $\mathrm{I}_{\text {DD5 }}$ | Stop mode; $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=5 \mathrm{~V} \pm 10 \%$, $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{A}}=25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ | - | 0.2 | 3 | $\mu \mathrm{A}$ |
|  |  | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=3 \mathrm{~V} \pm 10 \%, \mathrm{~T}_{\mathrm{A}}=25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ |  | 0.1 | 2 |  |

NOTE: Supply current does not include current drawn through internal pull-up resistors or external output current loads and ADC, DAC, BLD, LCD voltage dividing resistor.

Table 22-3. A.C. Electrical Characteristics
$\left(\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{A}}=-25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right.$ to $+8{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=2.2 \mathrm{~V}$ to 5.5 V$)$

| Parameter | Symbol | Conditions | Min | Typ | Max | Unit |
| :--- | :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Interrupt input high, <br> low width | $\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{NTH}}$, <br> $\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{INLL}}$ | $\mathrm{P} 0, \mathrm{P} 1$ <br> $\mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=5 \mathrm{~V}$ | - | 200 | - | ns |
| nRESET input <br> low width | $\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{RSL}}$ | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=5 \mathrm{~V} \pm 10 \%$ | 5 | - | - | $\mu \mathrm{s}$ |

NOTE: User must keep a larger value than the min value.


Figure 22-1. Input Timing for External Interrupts (Port 0, Port 1)


Figure 22-2. Input Timing for nRESET

Table 22-4. Data Retention Supply Voltage in Stop Mode
$\left(\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{A}}=-25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right.$ to $\left.+85^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right)$

| Parameter | Symbol | Conditions | Min | Typ | Max | Unit |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Data retention <br> supply voltage | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DDDR}}$ | - | 2.2 | - | 5.5 | V |
| Data retention <br> supply current | $\mathrm{I}_{\mathrm{DDDR}}$ | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DDDR}}=2.2 \mathrm{~V}$ | - | - | 2 | $\mu \mathrm{~A}$ |



Figure 22-3. Stop Mode Release Timing When Initiated by a nRESET


NOTE: twAIT is same as $2048 \times 32 \times 1 / f x x$. The value of 2048 which is selected for the clock source of the basic timer can be changed. And then the value of twait will be changed.

Figure 22-4. Stop Mode (Main) Release Timing Initiated by Interrupts


Figure 22-5. Stop Mode (Sub) Release Timing Initiated by Interrupts

Table 22-5. Synchronous SIO Electrical Characteristics
$\left(\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{A}}=-25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right.$ to $+85^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=4.5 \mathrm{~V}$ to $5.5 \mathrm{~V}, \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{SS}}=0 \mathrm{~V}, \mathrm{fxx}=10 \mathrm{MHz}$ oscillator $)$

| Parameter | Symbol | Conditions | Min | Typ | Max | Unit |
| :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| SCK Cycle time | $\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{CYC}}$ | - | 200 | - | - | ns |
| Serial Clock High Width | $\mathrm{t}_{\text {SCKH }}$ | - | 60 | - | - |  |
| Serial Clock Low Width | $\mathrm{t}_{\text {SCKL }}$ | - | 60 | - | - |  |
| Serial Output data delay <br> time | $\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{OD}}$ | - | - | - | 50 |  |
| Serial Input data setup <br> time | $\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{ID}}$ | - | 40 | - | - |  |
| Serial Input data Hold <br> time | $\mathrm{t}_{\mathbb{H}}$ | - | 100 | - | - |  |



Figure 22-6. Serial Data Transfer Timing

Table 22-6. BLD Electrical Characteristics
$\left(\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{A}}=25{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=2.2 \mathrm{~V}\right.$ to $\left.5.5 \mathrm{~V}, \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{SS}}=0 \mathrm{~V}\right)$

| Parameter | Symbol | Conditions | Min | Typ | Max | Unit |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| BLD Voltage | VB0 | Internal $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}$ mode | Typ-0.15 | 2.4 | Typ+0.15 | V |
|  | VB1 |  |  | 2.7 |  |  |
|  | VB2 |  |  | 3.0 |  |  |
|  | VB3 |  |  | 3.3 |  |  |
|  | VB4 |  | Typ-0.3 | 4.0 | Typ+0.3 |  |
|  | VB5 |  |  | 4.5 |  |  |
|  | VB6 | External Input mode, $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=2.2 \mathrm{~V}-3.0 \mathrm{~V}$ | Typ-0.15 | 1.2 | Typ+0.15 |  |
|  | VB7 | External Input mode, $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=3.0 \mathrm{~V}-5.5 \mathrm{~V}$ | Typ-0.3 | 1.2 | Typ+0.3 |  |
| BLD Current | IBLD | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=5.5 \mathrm{~V}$ | - | 50 | 100 | $\mu \mathrm{A}$ |
| BLD Response | TB | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=5.5 \mathrm{~V}$ | - | 1/fw (note) | - | $\mu \mathrm{s}$ |

NOTE: The fw must be greater than $10 \mu \mathrm{sec}$.

Table 22-7. ADC Electrical Characteristics
$\left(\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{A}}=-25{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right.$ to $+85{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=3.0 \mathrm{~V}$ to $\left.5.5 \mathrm{~V}, \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{SS}}=0 \mathrm{~V}\right)$

| Parameter | Symbol | Conditions | Min | Typ | Max | Unit |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| ADC Current | IADC | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=3.3 \mathrm{~V}$ | - | 1.5 | 3 | mA |
| Sampling Frequency | - | - | - | 8 | 11 | kHz |
| Resolution | - | Measurement Bandwidth: $20 \mathrm{~Hz}-4 \mathrm{kHz}$, Full scale input sine wave: 1 kHz , Sampling frequency: 8 kHz | - | 14 | - | bits |
| Signal to Distortion ratio | - |  | 70 | 75 | - | dB |
| Offset Error | - |  | - | - | $\pm 20$ | mV |
| Input Voltage Range | - | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=3.3 \mathrm{~V}$ | - | 2 | - | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{PP}}$ |

NOTE: All the data in this ADC characteristics is measured in the condition of $V_{D D}=3.3 \mathrm{~V}$

Table 22-8. DAC Electrical Characteristics
$\left(T_{A}=-25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right.$ to $+85^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=2.4 \mathrm{~V}$ to $5.5 \mathrm{~V}, \mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{SS}}=0 \mathrm{~V}$ )

| Parameter | Symbol | Conditions | Min | Typ | Max | Unit |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| DAC Current | IDAC | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=5.5 \mathrm{~V}$ | - | 1.5 | 3.0 | mA |
| Resolution | - | - | - | 8 | - | bits |
| Absolute Accuracy | - |  | -3 | - | 3 | LSB |
| Differential Linearity Error | DLE |  | -1.5 | - | 1.5 | LSB |
| Output Delay | - |  | - | - | 250 | $\mu \mathrm{s}$ |
| Output Load Resistance | Ro |  | - | 10 | - | $\mathrm{k} \Omega$ |
| Output Level (peak to peak) | - | $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{A}}=-30^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ to $+60^{\circ} \mathrm{C}$ | 1.2 | 1.5 | 1.88 | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{PP}}$ |
| Regulator Bias voltage | - | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=3.3 \mathrm{~V}$ | - | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}} / 2$ | - | V |
| Output Interval | - | $\begin{aligned} & \text { OSC }=4.096 \mathrm{MHz} ; \\ & \text { AD/DA clock input }=8 \mathrm{kHz} \end{aligned}$ | - | 31 | - | $\mu \mathrm{s}$ |

Table 22-9. Main Oscillator Frequency (fosc ${ }^{1}$ )
$\left(\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{A}}=-25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}\right.$ to $+85^{\circ} \mathrm{C} \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=2.2 \mathrm{~V}$ to 5.5 V )

| Oscillator | Clock Circuit | Test Condition | Min | Typ | Max | Unit |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Crystal/Ceramic |  | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=2.2 \mathrm{~V}-5.5 \mathrm{~V}$ | 0.4 | - | 4.1 | MHz |
|  |  | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=2.5 \mathrm{~V}-5.5 \mathrm{~V}$ |  |  | 6.2 |  |
|  |  | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=3.0 \mathrm{~V}-5.5 \mathrm{~V}$ |  |  | 8.2 |  |
| External clock |  | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=2.2 \mathrm{~V}-5.5 \mathrm{~V}$ | 0.4 | - | 4.1 | MHz |
|  |  | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=2.5 \mathrm{~V}-5.5 \mathrm{~V}$ |  |  | 6.2 |  |
|  |  | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=3.0 \mathrm{~V}-5.5 \mathrm{~V}$ |  |  | 8.2 |  |
| RC |  | $\mathrm{R}=20 \mathrm{Kohm}, \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=5 \mathrm{~V}$ | - | 2 | - | MHz |

NOTE: Oscillation frequency and Xin input frequency data are for oscillator characteristics only.

Table 22-10. Main Oscillator Clock Stabilization Time ( $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{ST} 1}$ )
$\left(\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{A}}=-25^{\circ} \mathrm{C}+85{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=4.5 \mathrm{~V}\right.$ to 5.5 V )

| Oscillator | Test Condition | Min | Typ | Max | Unit |
| :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Crystal | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=4.5 \mathrm{~V}$ to 5.5 V | - | - | 10 | ms |
| Ceramic | Stabilization occurs when $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}$ is equal to the minimum <br> oscillator voltage range. <br> $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=4.5 \mathrm{~V}$ to 5.5 V | - | - | 4 | ms |
| External clock | $\mathrm{X}_{\mathrm{IN}}$ input high and low level width $\left(\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{XH}}, \mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{XL}}\right)$ | 50 | - | - | ns |

NOTE: Oscillation stabilization time ( $\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{ST} 1}$ ) is the time required for the CPU clock to return to its normal oscillation frequency after a power-on occurs, or when Stop mode is ended by a nRESET signal.
©MMSUNH


Figure 22-7. Clock Timing Measurement at $X_{I N}$

Table 22-11. Sub Oscillator Frequency (fosc2)
$\left(\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{A}}=-25{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}+85{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=2.2 \mathrm{~V}\right.$ to 5.5 V$)$

| Oscillator | Clock Circuit | Test Condition | Min | Typ | Max | Unit |
| :---: | :---: | :--- | :--- | :--- | :---: | :---: |
| Crystal | XTı XTout | Crystal oscillation frequency | 32 | 32.768 | 35 | kHz |
|  |  | $\mathrm{C} 1=22 \mathrm{pF}, \quad \mathrm{C} 2=33 \mathrm{pF}$ <br> $\mathrm{R}=39 \mathrm{k} \Omega$ |  |  |  |  |
|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

NOTE: Oscillation frequency and XTin input frequency data are for oscillator characteristics only.

Table 22-12. Sub Oscillator (Crystal) Start up Time ( $\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{ST} 2}$ )
$\left(\mathrm{T}_{\mathrm{A}}=-25{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}+85{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{C}, \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=2.2 \mathrm{~V}\right.$ to 5.5 V$)$

| Oscillator | Test Condition | Min | Typ | Max | Unit |
| :---: | :--- | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| Normal mode | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=4.5 \mathrm{~V}$ to 5.5 V | - | 1 | 2 | sec |
|  | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=2.2 \mathrm{~V}$ to 4.5 V | - | - | 10 |  |
|  | $\mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=3.0 \mathrm{~V}$ to 5.5 V | - | - | 6 |  |
|  | $\mathrm{~V}_{\mathrm{DD}}=2.2 \mathrm{~V}$ to 3.0 V | - | - | 2 |  |

NOTE: Oscillation stabilization time ( $\mathrm{t}_{\mathrm{ST} 2}$ ) is the time required for the oscillator to it's normal oscillation when stop mode is released by interrupts.


Figure 22-8. Operating Voltage Range

## MECHANICAL DATA

## OVERVIEW

The S3CB519 microcontroller is currently available in a 100-pin QFP and TQFP package.


NOTE: Dimensions are in millimeters.

Figure 23-1. 100-QFP-1420C Package Dimensions


NOTE: Dimensions are in millimeters.

Figure 23-2. 100-TQFP-1414 Package Dimensions

## NOTES

## 24

## DEVELOPMENT TOOLS

## OVERVIEW

Samsung provides a powerful and easy-to-use development support system in turnkey form. The development support system is configured with a host system, debugging tools, and support software. For the host system, any standard computer that operates with windows $95 / 98 / \mathrm{NT}$ as its operating system can be used. One type of debugging tool including hardware and software is provided: the effective cost and powerful in-circuit emulator, InvisibleMDS, for CalmRISC8. Samsung also offers support software that includes debugger, Compiler, Assembler, and a program for setting options.

## CALMSHINE: IDE(INTEGRATED DEVELOPMENT ENVIRONMENT)

CalmRISC8 Samsung Host Interface for In-circuit Emulator, CalmSHINE, is a multi window based debugger for CalmRISC8. CalmSHINE provides pull-down, pop-up and tool-bar menus, mouse support, function/hot keys, syntax highlight, tool-tip, drag-and-drop and context-sensitive hyper-linked help. It has an advanced, multiple-windowed user interface that emphasizes ease of use. Each window can be sized, moved, scrolled, highlighted, added or removed, docked or undocked completely.

## INVISIBLE MDS: IN-CIRCUIT EMULATOR

The evaluation chip of CalmRISC8 has a basic debugging utility block. Using this block, evaluation chip directly interfaces with host through only communication wire. So, InvisibleMDS offers simple and powerful debugging environment.

## CALMRISC8 C-COMPILER: CALM8CC

The CalmRISC8 Compiler offers the standard features of the C language, plus many extensions for MCU applications, such as interrupt handling in C and data placement controls, designed to take fully advantage of CalmRISC8 facilities. It conforms to the ANSI specification. It supports standard library of functions applicable to MCU systems. The standard library also conforms to the ANSI standard. It generates highly size-optimized code for CalmRISC8 by fully utilizing CalmRISC8 architecture. It is available in a Windows version integrated with the CalmSHINE.

## CALMRISC8 RELOCATABLE ASSEMBLER: CALM8ASM

The CalmRISC8 Assembler is a relocatable assembler for Samsung's CalmRISC8 MCU and its MAC816 and MAC2424 coprocessors. It translates a source file containing assembly language statements into a relocatable machine object code file in Samsung format. It runs on WINDOWS95 compatible operating systems. It supports macros and conditional assembly. It produces the relocatable object code only, so the user should link object files. Object files can be linked with other object files and loaded into memory.

## CALMRISC8 LINKER: CALM8LINK

The CalmRISC8 Linker combines Samsung object format files and library files and generates absolute, machinecode executable hex programs or binary files for CalmRISC8 MCU and its MAC816 and MAC2424 coprocessors. It generates the map file, which shows the physical addresses to which each section and symbol is bounded, start addresses of each section and symbol, and size of them. It runs on WINDOWS95 compatible operating systems.

## EMULATION PROBE BOARD CONFIGURATION



NOTES:

1. Unit: mm
2. SW1: reset
3. Power: power input ( $5 \mathrm{~V} / 500 \mathrm{~mA}$ )
4. ADgain, AVrefout, ADinn, ADinp signals are not connected with CN1/CN2.

If you make an ADC application, refer to Figure 24-1 and use that circuit block.
Also you can refer to Figure 19-2 A/D converter block diagram for AVrefout, AVdd, AVss, REFh, REFL.

Figure 24-1. Emulation Probe Board Configuration

Invisible MDS Connector = 10-pin/normal Pitch (2.54mm)

| Pin No. | Pin Name | Pin No. | Pin Name |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | V $_{\text {DD }}$ | 6 | PTD0_TxD |
| 2 | PNTRST_NINIT | 7 | GND |
| 3 | PTCK_MCLK | 8 | UCLK |
| 4 | PTMS | 9 | JTAGSEL |
| 5 | PTDI_RxD | 10 | - |

## EXTERNAL EVENT INPUT HEADERS (JP4)

These input headers are used to add the break condition to the core status externally when the break using CalmBreaker occurs in the evaluation chip.


## EVENT MATCH OUTPUT HEADERS (JP9)

Four event match signals and one combination event signal are occurred by the CalmBreaker in the evaluation chip. These signals are transmitted through the evaluation chip.


## EXTERNAL BREAK INPUT HEADERS (TP4)

This input pin is used to break during the evaluation chip run.


## A/D CONVERTER FUNCTION BLOCK



Single-ended Input Application


NOTE: When you make some application board, you must use this circuit block.

Figure 24-2. A/D converter Function Block Diagram

COMMUNICATION SELECTION

| JP5-JP8 State | Description |
| :---: | :---: |
|  | When differential-ended input application is used for the ADC, JP5-JP8 must be set. |
|  | When Single-ended input application is used for the ADC, JP5-JP8 must be set. |

## USE CLOCK SETTING FOR EXTERNAL CLOCK MODE

Proper crystal and capacitors for main clock should be inserted into pin socket on the IE Board as follows;


## SUB CLOCK SETTING

For sub-clock mode a crystal, 32.768 kHz and capacitors should be inserted into pin socket on the IE Board as follows;


NOTE: The value of resistor is $39 \mathrm{k} \Omega$.

## CN1, CN2 PIN ASSIGNMENT

CN1,2 are the signals of IE-B519 and their pin assignment is the same as the pin of S3CB519.

| CN1 | Function | CN1 | Function | CN2 | Function | CN2 | Function |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| 1 | P4.1/COM9 | 2 | P4.2/COM10 | 51 | P3.7/SEG40 | 52 | P5.0/SEG39 |
| 3 | P4.3/COM11 | 4 | P4.4/COM12 | 53 | P5.1/SEG38 | 54 | P5.2/SEG37 |
| 5 | P4.5/COM13 | 6 | P4.6/COM14 | 55 | P5.3/SEG36 | 56 | P5.4/SEG35 |
| 7 | P4.7/COM15 | 8 | P0.0 | 57 | P5.5/SEG34 | 58 | P5.6/SEG33 |
| 9 | P0.1 | 10 | P0.2 | 59 | P5.7/SEG32 | 60 | P5.8/SEG31 |
| 11 | P0.3 | 12 | P0.4 | 61 | P5.9/SEG30 | 62 | P5.10/SEG29 |
| 13 | P0.5 | 14 | P0.6 | 63 | P5.11/SEG28 | 64 | P5.12/SEG27 |
| 15 | VDD | 16 | VSS | 65 | P5.13/SEG26 | 66 | P5.14/SEG25 |
| 17 | NC | 18 | NC | 67 | P5.15/SEG24 | 68 | SEG23 |
| 19 | NC | 20 | NC | 69 | SEG22 | 70 | SEG21 |
| 21 | NC | 22 | RSSETB EXT | 71 | SEG20 | 72 | SEG19 |
| 23 | DAC | 24 | NC | 73 | SEG18 | 74 | SEG17 |
| 25 | NC | 26 | NC | 75 | CKSEG16 | 76 | PDSEG15 |
| 27 | NC | 28 | NC | 77 | PDSEG14 | 78 | PDSEG13 |
| 29 | NC | 30 | NC | 79 | PDSEG12 | 80 | PDSEG11 |
| 31 | NC | 32 | P1.0 | 81 | PDSEG10 | 82 | PDSEG9 |
| 33 | P1.1 | 34 | P1.2 | 83 | PDSEG8 | 84 | PDSEG7 |
| 35 | P1.3 | 36 | P2.0/SEG55 | 85 | PDSEG6 | 86 | PDSEG5 |
| 37 | P2.1/SEG54 | 38 | P2.2/SEG53 | 87 | PDSEG4 | 88 | PDSEG3 |
| 39 | P2.3/SEG54 | 40 | P2.4/SEG51 | 89 | PDSEG2 | 90 | PDSEG1 |
| 41 | P2.5/SEG54 | 42 | P2.6/SEG49 | 91 | PDSEG0 | 92 | COM0 |
| 43 | P2.7/SEG54 | 44 | P3.0/SEG47 | 93 | COM1 | 94 | COM2 |
| 45 | P3.1/SEG54 | 46 | P3.2/SEG45 | 95 | COM3 | 96 | COM4 |
| 47 | P3.3/SEG54 | 48 | P3.4/SEG43 | 97 | COM5 | 98 | COM6 |
| 49 | P3.5/SEG54 | 50 | P3.6/SEG41 | 99 | COM7 | 100 | P4.0/COM8 |

